

EXHIBIT A
PART 1 OF 2

**UNREDACTED VERSION OF
DOCUMENT SOUGHT TO BE
SEALED**

IN THE UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT
FOR THE NORTHERN DISTRICT OF CALIFORNIA
SAN FRANCISCO DIVISION

ORACLE AMERICA, INC.,)	
)	
Plaintiff,)	
)	
v.)	Civ. A. No. 10-03561 WHA
)	
GOOGLE INC.,)	(Jury)
)	
Defendant.)	

EXPERT REPORT OF PROFESSOR ADAM JAFFE, Ph.D.

[CORRECTED]

FEBRUARY 8, 2016

EXPERT REPORT OF ADAM JAFFE, PhD

CONFIDENTIAL – ATTORNEYS’ EYES ONLY
PURSUANT TO PROTECTIVE ORDER

I declare under penalty of perjury under the laws of the United States of America that the foregoing is true and correct. Executed on this 8th day of February, 2016, in Wellington, New Zealand.

A handwritten signature in black ink, appearing to read "Adam Jaffe", is written over a light gray rectangular background.

Adam Jaffe, PhD

I. Assignment	6
II. Qualifications.....	6
III. Summary of Conclusions.....	8
A. Key findings.....	9
B. Report structure	14
IV. Background.....	15
A. Network goods and platform markets	15
1) The economics of network goods.....	16
2) The economics of platform markets.....	17
3) Platform competition	20
B. The Java platform	23
1) Java as a “platform” in the economic sense.....	24
2) Java monetization.....	24
3) Java community growth and licensing successes across multiple form factors	26
C. Google	29
1) Google as a platform	30
2) Google’s monetization model	31
3) Google’s platform playbook.....	38
D. The mobile ecosystem.....	50
1) Competitive landscape.....	50
2) Growth of mobile industry.....	52
3) Sun’s mobile presence (2000-2008)	60
4) Conclusion.....	64
V. Google’s Conduct.....	65
A. Google’s need to expand its mobile presence.....	66
B. The Android platform strategy.....	70
1) Android development 2005-2006.....	71
2) Android business strategy	75
C. Google copies Java API packages without a license or permission	79
D. Android copying of API packages	83
E. Incompatibility of Android and Java	83
F. Conclusion	84
VI. The Importance of Intellectual Property and Copyright Protection.....	84
A. The economics of intellectual property.....	84

B. The economics of copyright	88
VII. Fair Use Analysis.....	90
VIII. Factor 1.....	91
A. Commercial nature of Android and its use of Java.....	92
1) The role of the Java API packages in Android’s commercial success.....	93
2) Android revenues	102
3) Continued strategic importance of Android to Google.....	116
4) Commerciality overall.....	128
B. Analysis of transformative use.....	128
1) Legal background on “transformative” use	128
2) Economic analysis of substitution.....	129
3) Factor 1 Conclusion.....	134
C. Dr. Astrachan’s Factor 1 analysis	134
1) Non-transformative nature of the use	134
2) Commerciality of the use	139
D. Factor 1 conclusion.....	140
IX. Factor 4.....	140
A. Summary of harm to Oracle potential markets.....	141
B. Harm to Oracle’s potential market in critical Java device categories	145
1) Mobile phones	146
2) Other mobile devices – tablets, e-readers	161
3) Summary of harm on mobile devices	173
4) Automotive	173
5) Internet of Things.....	176
6) Voice over Internet Protocol (VoIP).....	177
7) Home entertainment.....	178
8) GPS systems.....	182
9) Vending machines.....	183
10) Printers.....	184
11) Household appliances.....	185
12) Cameras.....	185
13) Payment terminals and point of sale systems	186
C. Widespread use.....	187
D. Response to Dr. Astrachan’s Factor 4 analysis	188

1) Market substitution	188
2) Impact of OpenJDK	188
3) Oracle’s alleged tolerance of other unlicensed Java uses	192
4) Conclusion.....	193
X. Conclusion	193

I. ASSIGNMENT

1. I have been retained by plaintiff Oracle America, Inc. (“Oracle”) to undertake an analysis of whether Google Inc.’s (“Google”) use of Oracle’s copyrighted works constitutes a “fair use.” Specifically, I have been asked to analyze from an economic perspective (1) the purpose and character of Google’s use of Oracle’s copyrighted works, and (2) the effect of Google’s use upon the potential market for or value of the Java platform. In addition, I have been asked to respond to certain assertions in Dr. Owen Astrachan’s report that are fundamentally economic in nature. The opinions and information contained in this report are based on my knowledge and understanding of the currently available record. However, my study is ongoing, and expert witnesses’ depositions have not yet occurred. Accordingly, I reserve the right to revise and/or supplement my expert opinions to reflect any additional analyses I may formulate based upon additional testimony, newly acquired information, court determinations on evidence that will be excluded at trial, or views expressed by the parties’ expert witnesses. I also expect to create trial demonstratives including graphical depictions and presentations of my opinions.

2. A list of the materials I have relied upon in the course of preparing this report are in Exhibit A.

II. QUALIFICATIONS

3. I am Director and Senior Fellow at Motu Economics and Public Policy Research in Wellington, New Zealand, and the Fred C. Hecht Professor in Economics Emeritus at Brandeis University in Waltham, Massachusetts. From 2003-11, I was Dean of Arts and Sciences at Brandeis. Before becoming Dean, I was the Chair of the Department of Economics. Prior to joining the Brandeis faculty in 1994, I was on the faculty of Harvard University. During the academic year 1990-91, I took a leave of absence from Harvard to serve as Senior Staff Economist at the President’s Council of Economic Advisers in Washington, D.C. At the Council, I had primary staff responsibility for science and technology policy, regulatory policy, and antitrust policy issues.

4. I have authored or co-authored over eighty scholarly articles and two books. I have served as a member of the Board of Editors of the American Economic Review, the leading American academic economics journal, as an Associate Editor of the Rand Journal of Economics, and as a member of the Board of Editors of the Journal of Industrial Economics. I am a Research Associate of the National Bureau of Economic Research (NBER), in which capacity I co-founded and co-directed for many years the NBER Innovation Policy and the Economy Group. The website <http://ideas.repec.org/>, hosted by the Federal Reserve Bank of St. Louis, which ranks economists based on the strength of their scholarly

publications, ranks me in the top 1% out of approximately 35,000 economists worldwide, and Google Scholar indicates that my publications have received almost 40,000 citations.

5. At Brandeis and Harvard, I have taught graduate and undergraduate courses in microeconomics, antitrust and regulatory economics, industrial organization, law and economics, and the economics of innovation and technological change. I have served as a consultant to a variety of businesses and government agencies on economic matters, including antitrust and competition issues, other regulatory issues, and intellectual property matters, including patents and copyrights. I have worked on projects for clients from California (software patent litigation), Alaska (oil transportation tariffs), Utah (regulation of gas pipelines), Idaho (competition in the electric sector), Texas (railroad contract dispute) and New York (music license royalties), among others.

6. I have been qualified as an economic expert in federal courts in the Southern District of New York (proper basis for music performance license fees in cable television, 2001; appropriate structure and benchmark fee for music performance license in background music service, two separate cases 2010), Idaho (evaluating market power and allegations of anticompetitive behavior, 2002), and in the District of New Jersey (commercial success as a factor in patent obviousness determination, 2009). My testimony has also been accepted and used by state courts, state regulatory agencies, the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission and its Administrative Law Judges, private arbitration panels, and arbitration/royalty panels convened by the U.S. Copyright Office/Library of Congress.

7. I have consulted for both owners and users of intellectual property on its valuation and the interaction between intellectual property and competition. I have consulted for the Copyright Clearance Center on the valuation of photocopying licenses and the American Chemical Society on paper and digital journal subscriptions and the relationship between the two. I chaired the Brandeis committee that drafted its current Intellectual Property Policy. I have testified on behalf of both plaintiffs and defendants in patent cases involving a consumer product, a medical device, a software program, and pharmaceuticals. I testified at the request of the Chairman before the U.S. House Subcommittee on Courts, the Internet and Intellectual Property on patent policy reform. I have testified in arbitration proceedings under the Federal Insecticide, Fungicide and Rodenticide Act (FIFRA) regarding the valuation of test data with respect to the safety of pesticides.

8. I am being compensated in this matter at my standard rate of \$1,200 per hour. This compensation is not contingent in any way upon my testimony or upon the result of this proceeding. A copy of my CV is attached as Appendix A.

III. SUMMARY OF CONCLUSIONS

9. This case provides us with an unusually strong foundation in assessing economic impacts. Rather than guess at the future outcomes of Google’s unauthorized copying of Oracle’s copyrighted work, we have nearly a decade of evidence required to determine fair use – namely, the degree of commercial exploitation that Google made of its unauthorized copying of key elements of the Java platform (which I understand to be an application platform and to which I will refer as “Java”, “the Java platform”, or the “Java application platform”) and the totality of the harm to Oracle from Google’s conduct. It is from this actual evidence of real-life outcomes that I can readily determine that Google’s copying of the Java API packages demonstrate none of the economic indicia of fair use.

10. Google and Sun Microsystems, Inc. (“Sun”) began discussions about Google licensing the Java platform in the mid-2000s, as consumers were in the process of transforming their digital behavior — from a tethered personal computer (“PC”) world to a mobile one. After a decade of establishing a search and advertising platform, Google faced serious challenges in protecting its gains in the increasingly mobile world. New gatekeepers emerged that could undermine all that Google had accomplished. Wireless carriers, mobile phone manufacturers and a shift from browser- to app-based consumption, coupled with the rise of Apple and its iPhone all presented serious risks to Google’s future. Google executives acknowledged these risks and set a path to establishing a mobile ecosystem under the control of a Google application platform called Android. The feat of establishing a new, viable mobile application platform is a precarious one that tech giants including Microsoft, Facebook and Amazon have failed to accomplish.

11. Google’s strategy relied on rapidly attracting a force of application developers that would compel users, carriers and Original Equipment Manufacturers (“OEMs”) to adopt the Android ecosystem. Google surveyed all available options, from creating its own application platform to adopting available technologies. It landed firmly on Java, and its robust APIs and 6 million strong developer community. Sun had built those assets through over a decade of investment and with them had already captured the lion’s share (approximately 80%) of the nascent mobile application platform market. Sun was open to licensing its Java platform to Google and continuing to furnish its technologies to a new mobile environment. Google instead chose to without authorization copy the Java API packages and integrate them into its Android platform in the same way as their original use without authorization and to build Android’s business at Sun’s and now Oracle’s great expense.

12. Those decisions made by Google and its executive team set both parties on a course, the economic outcomes of which are now readily observable. Google used its Java-based Android operating system to capture approximately 80% of the users, carriers and mobile phone OEMs that make up today's mobile market. In so doing, Google has reaped over \$40 billion in revenue and has secured its search and other advertising business from the competitive forces that threatened its existence. Having built a mobile phone juggernaut, Google set off to capture an array of other device categories, from connected cars to home entertainment and beyond – all of which were formerly powered by the Java platform, or were clear candidates for inclusion of the Java platform.

13. The economic implications are straightforward. Android's unauthorized use of the Java API packages competes with and substitutes for the Java platform. Google's gain is Oracle's loss. From an economic perspective, this is not fair use. I proceed in this summary section to describe my key findings and to provide a roadmap to the analyses in this report on which they are built.

A. Key findings

14. The economic purpose of copyright is to preserve and enhance the incentive for the production of creative works. Copyright provides economic rewards to creators. Copyright gives creators the ability to promote the widespread dissemination and use of their works in a manner of their choice. Fair use provides a limited exception to copyright protection in certain specified circumstances.

15. It is my understanding that whether or not copying of copyrighted material can be considered fair use is based on consideration of four factors. The first and fourth factors involve considerations that call for economic analysis. Factor One pertains to “the purpose and character of the use, including whether such use is of a commercial nature or is for nonprofit educational purposes,” and concerns: (a) whether the use serves a commercial purpose, and (b) whether and to what extent the new work is “transformative.” Factor Four, concerning “the effect of the use upon the potential market for or value of the copyrighted work,” considers the effect of the use upon the potential market for or value of the copyrighted work.¹ I proceed with an economic analysis of each of these factors.

16. The Java platform is a valuable economic asset created by Sun and now owned by Oracle. Copyright operates to protect the value of that asset by preventing others from copying parts of Java in ways that are inconsistent with its owners' dissemination and use plans. Oracle reaps the rewards of its copyrighted creation by licensing it to various parties and, on occasion, enforcing its copyright interests when it discovers an unlicensed use of Java in the marketplace. From its beginning, Java has been

¹ 17 U.S.C. § 107(4). Oracle America, Inc. v. Google Inc., Fed. Cir. 2013-1021, -1022 (May 9, 2014 Decision).

licensed in an evolving set of device contexts, such as mainframe computers, desktop personal computers, ATMs, mobile phones, personal digital assistants (“PDA”), TVs, and smart cards. In each of these new contexts, Java has been implemented to perform in the same way: as a software applications platform.² As an application platform, Java allows developers to write a program once for a specific edition and be assured that it will work in the same way on all devices that support that edition (“write once, run anywhere”). In licensing Java for use in each of these commercial device implementation contexts, Sun, and now Oracle has sought to ensure the compatibility expressed in its “write once, run anywhere” motto. Compatibility is important because it means developers can count on applications written for one Java device running on a different device in the same context (*e.g.*, a program written for a Windows desktop PC that is, without modification, capable of running on an Apple desktop PC).

17. Except for Google and its development of Android, most, if not all, commercial entities implementing Java for use in a device have done so under a commercial license. In 2005, Google initially approached Sun for a license to use Java in Android, but decided to walk away from negotiations. Instead, Google simply copied portions of Java and incorporated it into Android. Sun discovered this after Android’s public source code release in 2008 and engaged Google for further licensing discussions in 2008 and in subsequent years. Each time, Google refused to take a license to Java.

18. Java-based Android secured for Google much of the benefit of developers’ being able to quickly provide applications for Android. But, Google’s Java-based Android was not and is still not compatible with Java. I understand from Professor Schmidt that over time Android has continued to evolve incompatibly from Java. This non-compatibility reduces the value of Java to developers and device manufacturers and hence reduces its value for its owner.

19. By the mid-2000s, Java was the pre-eminent software application platform for seamless interaction between devices (such as computers and phones) and applications (“apps”). As the mobile market took off, Sun was poised to take off with it. Google severely undermined Sun’s and now Oracle’s presence in the mobile market when Google released its unlicensed Java-based platform, Android.

20. Google chose to use Java in order to enter the mobile market quickly and gain the benefit of rapid adoption among developers.³ This reduces the value of Java to other potential developers and device

² I understand that there are several distinct editions of Java, each designed for classes of computing devices based on resource constraints.

³ As further detailed in Dr. Kemerer’s report of January 8, 2016, Google chose to use Java without the necessary license for use in Android to “(1) enable quick time to market, (2) quickly enable high quality development through leveraging the community of Java developers who were already familiar with the Java API packages, and among whom the Java API packages were already popular and (3) enable deployment of applications on a wide variety of

manufacturers and hence reduces its value for its owner. Thus Google took advantage of the large Java developer base and ecosystem (which was comprised of OEMs and carriers) that Sun had built by investing substantial resources over decades. Android was successful in attracting app developers, users and OEMs. Android soon gained a predominant share of mobile phones. As a result, Oracle's Java was crowded out of the most important device market of the last decade.

21. Google's use of Java API packages in Android is highly commercial. Google's overarching commercial strategy is to sell advertising, initially on its search results pages and then in apps. Google extended this strategy through the launch of Android, which from the beginning was designed to grow and protect Google's advertising revenues. Google's Android platform also includes the Google Play store, where Google offers for sale millions of apps and digital content to Android users, generating over [REDACTED] in revenue in 2015 alone.⁴ The fact that Google does not demand royalties for and instead actually subsidizes the use of Android by phone manufacturers reinforces the commercial nature of the enterprise, just as the free distribution of programming by the original over-the-air television stations does not undermine their very commercial nature.⁵ Google's enormous commercial success with Android was highly dependent on its copying of the Java API packages, as this allowed the Android platform to launch during a critical competitive window and to grow quickly.

22. Google's use of Java API packages in Android was not transformative. The Java API packages have always served as an important component of the Java platform. Google took a portion of the Java API packages, and used them to construct a substitute software application platform. In doing so, Google significantly reduced Oracle's opportunity to license those API packages for use on mobile devices. In addition, Android's rapid adoption led to the decline of competing Java-licensed software. This reduced Oracle's opportunity to license Java to be used as the software application platform for non-Android phones.

23. In addition, Java's value to Oracle is a function of the size and diversity of the applications developer community working in Java. By creating a software application platform built on Java but incompatible with it, Google has constrained the potential growth of the Java developer community and the number of Java-compatible apps, even as Oracle attempts to resist these constraints by continuing to develop its Java platform and cultivate the Java developer community. Because of Java's "write once, run

devices" (including because Java was widely adopted and successful among OEMs and carriers). Expert Report of Dr. Chris Kemerer, January 8, 2016.

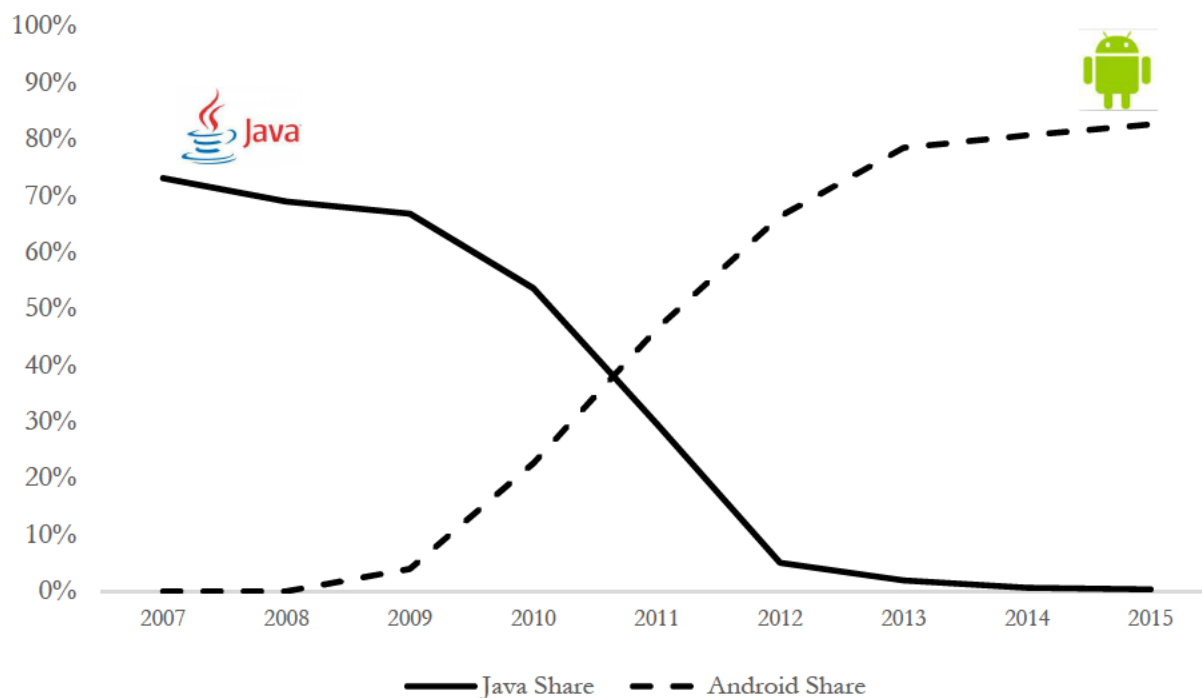
⁴ GOOG-00103813.

⁵ Deposition of Jim Kolotouros, Jan. 26, 2016, pg. 98.

anywhere” principle, this reduction in the potential growth of the developer community creates harm across all of the device markets in which Oracle has or could license Java to device manufacturers. This also reduces the incentive for operating system designers and equipment manufacturers to build their new systems based on Java. This has likely led to fewer licensees and, especially given Android’s price tag, reduced revenue from the licensees that Oracle does retain.

24. Oracle experiences significant potential market harm from Google’s copying of the Java API packages. In 2007, approximately 80% of mobile phones worldwide incorporated the licensed Java platform. In 2008, Google released its Java-based Android operating system. At the time, users were beginning to shift their Internet consumption from the PC to mobile, and particularly, mobile apps. Additionally, it was a strategic imperative for Google to address the competitive threat posed by other mobile phones and mobile platforms, and to extend Google’s PC search and other advertising monetization engines to a Google-controlled mobile platform. Given the dynamic nature of platform competition, if Google had not built Android with the Java API packages and therefore suffered a delay while creating its own alternative, such a resulting delay in introduction and reduction in its developer base may well have hindered Android to the point that it would not have emerged as the major alternative to iPhone. It is the nature of platform competition that “early entry” to achieve necessary scale is critical to platform success. Google was neck-and-neck with Apple and other competitors to introduce mobile platforms and achieve that necessary scale. Google needed to ensure continued traffic for its advertising platform on mobile devices. Google did so by developing and releasing the Android platform using Java in order to ensure developer uptake and using revenue-sharing subsidies in order to ensure carrier and OEM uptake. Android’s success allowed Google to enjoy unprecedented advertising revenues. It also inflicted great market harm on Oracle.

25. Neither Oracle nor Sun before it receives any of Google’s sizable gains from its success with its Java-based Android platform: more than \$40B in revenue and the extension of its search and other advertising platform to mobile. Further, Google’s copying of the Java API packages without permission or license deprived Oracle of the right to participate in Java-based Android’s success in mobile. Figure 1 below shows the decline in licensed Java and the benefits to Java-based Android following Android’s growth.

Figure 1: Java-based Android vs. Licensed Java Smartphone Market Share⁶

That harm continues, as Google brings its Java-based Android platform to an array of other embedded devices, such as automobiles, wearables, set-top boxes and household appliances that are actual and potential markets for Java licensing. Java licensing revenues have drastically decreased not only for mobile phones but also for these other types of embedded devices.

26. The existence of an open source licensed version of Java, called OpenJDK, does not make Google's use of the Java API packages a "fair use." From an economic perspective, it is perfectly logical for a rights holder to make its intellectual property available free-of-charge (but not free of restrictions and obligations) in some contexts while still seeking to control it, and receive compensation for its use in other contexts. My understanding is that OpenJDK is intended to provide its community a framework for experimentation and development and internal use of Java, but under terms that typically make it unattractive as the basis for commercial exploitation. The claim that Google could have used OpenJDK for its Android implementation in 2007 is economically doubtful because: (1) Google faced known risks (and made "enemies") using Java API packages without a license and therefore, it does not make sense for Google to have borne those risks if they could easily have been avoided, and (2) the fact that no other major commercial device manufacturer has gone this route suggests that the restrictions imposed by

⁶ See Exhibit 3.

OpenJDK’s license—“GNU General Public License, version 2, with the Classpath Exception 2.0” (“GPLv2”) among other licenses — do, in fact, make commercial exploitation under that license impractical. Google’s own acknowledgement of the significant risk that GPL-related licensing presented to partner adoption of Android must be considered in concert with the time-to-market imperatives for Android. Google required the partnership of OEMs and carriers to be able to successfully launch Android; putting those partnerships at risk would have undermined Google’s ability to achieve early entry and attendant scale benefits and could have threatened the ultimate success of Google’s mobile ecosystem.

B. Report structure

27. I begin with the foundational business structures that economists use to understand how particular markets work and how companies compete. In Section IV, I describe the key foundational economic considerations and basic histories of Oracle and Google and how they make money from Java and Android. The business models are common to the digital age, but rather new in the sweep of economics. They require a bit of an introduction to the economics of network goods and platform markets, as both Java and Android exhibit characteristics of these types of businesses. In short, those business approaches involve subsidizing some users to build an audience and then monetizing that audience via sales to another side of the market. In the case of Oracle, this means that application developers can use Java royalty-free, but OEMs and other platform providers pay for the Java platform and get to enjoy the benefits of millions of developers writing applications. In the case of Google, this means giving services to users like search or maps, and providing OEMs and carriers with an application platform like Android, all in the service of tracking user behavior and selling access to users and their online footprint to advertisers.

28. In Section V, I turn to the conduct at issue in this case. I look at the opportunities and threats that Google faced as users shifted to mobile. With this context, I then describe the breakdown of the negotiations between the parties and Google’s decision to copy the Java API packages into Android without taking a required license.

29. In Section VI, I provide an overview of the economics of intellectual property and copyright law. This leads directly into Sections VII, VIII and IX, which set forth my analysis of Google’s conduct and its effects on Oracle. These analyses address Factor 1 and Factor 4 of the fair use test. I understand that these factors are the most critical in the test for whether an unauthorized copying of a copyrighted work is permitted as a “fair use” exception to infringement. This makes sense when one considers that copyright provides a limited monopoly for the purpose of enhancing creation and dissemination of creative works,

and the purpose of fair use is to permit limited exploitation without material economic impairment of the value of the copyrighted work. I understand that courts have held that a decline in copyright value due to disparagement or parody may be a fair use, but a decline in value due to substitution is not. In these sections, I rely on the material established in the earlier background sections and bring in additional evidence and analysis to present a full understanding of the primary issues that must be considered to determine fair use under Factor 1 and Factor 4.

30. For Factor 1, I assess the degree of commerciality in Google's copying of the Java API packages, and whether Google's use is of a similar or different (transformative) purpose for those API packages than the use that Sun and then Oracle have made of them. For Factor 4, I assess the harm to Oracle from Google's unlicensed copying of the Java API packages. This Factor 4 analysis considers the actual, observed harm in the form of lost deals and missed opportunities in the case record, as well as harm to "potential" Oracle markets. Factor 4 also asks us to consider additional harm, if any, were the conduct at issue in the case to become more widespread – or put another way, the harm to Oracle should all market participants be allowed to copy the Java API packages without a license.

31. I find that the economic factors clearly point to a finding that Google's copying of the Java API packages is not a fair use. Under Factor 1, Google's Java-based Android is highly commercial. Android is particularly directed to protect Google's business strategy and increase its profits. Google's use of the Java API packages is in a manner similar to Oracle's and, because of this, Android acts as a competing substitute for the Java platform as an application platform. Under Factor 4, I find overwhelming evidence that Google's Java-based Android caused Oracle significant market harm, with Android succeeding at the direct expense of the Java platform across mobile and many other device categories critical to Oracle's business operations.

IV. BACKGROUND

32. In this section, I review the key economic concepts at issue in the competition between the parties in this matter. I provide an overview of the history and business models of Sun's and Oracle's Java platform as well as Google's search and other advertising businesses. I pay particular attention to the rise of mobile phones, its key industry participants and how the parties' businesses were affected by this rise.

A. Network goods and platform markets

33. The economic analysis of the fair use factors requires particular attention to the nature of the products offered by the parties embodying the copyrighted work, the economics of the markets in which they compete and the dominant technology and innovation trends surrounding the conduct at issue. In this

section I will introduce the important relevant economic concepts of network goods and platform markets. The firms involved, Sun/Oracle and Google, offer goods with network effects and have competing platforms. It is also important to understand the background of these companies' development, their product offerings and how they ultimately find themselves in competition. Finally, the emergence of mobile phones is the essential technology trend that underlies the conduct in this matter. In this section, I provide an overview of each of these elements of the case.

1) The economics of network goods

34. The products at issue in this case, the Java platform and the Android platform, are examples of network goods. Network goods are products or services that become more valuable to each user as the number of users increases. Common examples of network goods in the technology space include telephones, email, and fax machines. For instance, when only a few people had telephones, telephones were not very useful because there was almost no one to call. But as adoption rates increased, the telephone became incrementally more valuable to each existing user.

35. The incremental benefits experienced by existing users in a network are an example of what economists call "positive externalities." Economists use the term externality to describe circumstances in which one party makes an economic decision that has consequences for some other party that are "external" to the market transaction. This is intended to stand in contrast to benefits conveyed through market exchange. When my barber cuts my hair, I get a benefit, and I pay the barber for the benefit delivered – a market exchange. When I buy an Android phone, I get some benefit from the use of the phone, and I pay the phone manufacturer for that benefit. These effects are all internal to the market transaction. In the case of the Android phone, however, when I add myself to the Android system, I also create benefits for other Android users and for parties that seek to develop apps for Android, because having more Android users makes the overall Android ecosystem more valuable to them. They do not pay me for that benefit, so it is an "externality."⁷ The positive externalities associated with network goods are also sometimes called "network effects."

36. Networks do not spring up instantaneously, but rather grow endogenously over time. For this reason, expectations also play an important role in network economics. If users have a choice between two or more networks to join for a particular purpose, the network effects mean that, all else equal, they want to be part of the larger network. In fact, researchers have shown that for markets with strong

⁷ Externalities can be negative rather than positive. When a factory pollutes the environment in the process of making its products, it harms us all, and we are not usually paid any compensation for the harm that we bear. Hal R. Varian, *Intermediate Microeconomics* 557 and 591 (W. W. Norton & Company, 4th ed. 1996), p. 557

network effects, the size of the network can be more important even than product quality.⁸ In addition, since it is typically costly to switch networks once you have joined, users (or developers) want to join the network that ultimately will be the largest, not just the largest at the moment (though being the largest at the moment may be perceived to imply largest later). So users tend to join the network that they believe or expect will be most successful, thereby contributing to its success. In this way, the success of a network can depend on self-fulfilling expectations, so that success or failure in quickly achieving a “critical mass” of users can determine which new networks succeed and which fail in the long run.⁹ The advantage achieved in the early stages can last decades (*e.g.*, Microsoft Windows).

2) The economics of platform markets

37. In some cases, network goods are enhanced or facilitated by a “platform.” In a platform market, one or more groups of market participants are brought together by a common medium, known as the platform.¹⁰ One or more of the groups connected to the platform is typically characterized by network effects, and part of the purpose of the platform is to facilitate the growth of such networks, thereby enhancing the positive externalities associated with the network.¹¹

38. Table 1 provides examples of platform, or two-sided, markets.

⁸ Zhu, Feng, and Marco Iansiti. “Entry into platform-based markets.” *Strategic Management Journal* 33.1 (2012).

⁹ Michael Katz and Carl Shapiro, *Network Externalities, Competition, and Compatibility*, 75 (3) *The American Economic Review* (1985).

¹⁰ See generally Marc Rysman, *The Economics of Two-Sided Markets*, 23(3) *J. Econ. Perspectives* 125 (2009); Jean-Charles Rochet and Jean Tirole, *Platform competition in two-sided markets*, *J. European Economic Association* 990 (2003); Jean-Charles Rochet and Jean Tirole, *Two-Sided Markets: A Progress Report*, 37(3) *RAND J. Econ* 645 (2006).

¹¹ The use of the word “platform” in economics is distinct from its use in software engineering. A software engineering platform is a program or set of programs upon which other programs build. Definition of: software platform, PC Mag, <http://www.pcmag.com/encyclopedia/term/61977/software-platform>, Last visited Feb. 8, 2016). While some software engineering platforms have attributes of an economic platform, some do not. And some platforms in the economic sense operate without a software engineering platform. To minimize confusion, I will use “platform good” or “platform market” when talking about a platform in the economic sense, and “software platform” for that sense, unless the context makes it clear which concept is being invoked.

Table 1: Examples of Platform Markets

Platform Market	Platforms	Market Participants
Electricity grids	Energy commission	Power generators, users of power
Search engines	Google, Yahoo, Bing	Users, Advertisers
Credit cards	Visa, MasterCard, American Express	Vendors, Consumers
Video games	Xbox One, Playstation 4, Wii	Users, Software Developers
Operating Systems	Windows, Mac OS X, iOS, Android	Users, Application Developers, Advertisers, Hardware Developers

39. Platform externalities allow the entity that controls the platform to maximize its profits by deciding how much to charge on each side of the platform. In many cases, this means the platform will subsidize one group, especially if that group is harder to attract or when the members of that group each add more value to the platform on a per-user basis.¹² Indeed, it is common in platform markets for one side of the market to get free use of the platform, because the extent of their presence determines the revenue that the platform owner can collect from the other side.¹³ A familiar example of this phenomenon is over-the-air TV and radio, through which viewers and listeners get free media content, because the stations sell ads based directly on their ratings.

40. Platforms can be managed by public, quasi-public or private entities. For example, the electric grid is managed by quasi-public agencies balancing the output of the multiple generators of electricity with the purchases of the many users. An example of a private platform is a payment platform like Visa, which connects banks, users wishing to make purchases, and businesses wishing to collect for those purchases via debit and credit cards.

41. Platform markets arise when network externalities are present, and there are two or more sides to the market. In the case of the original telephone, the value of the phone increased as more people obtained phones and there were more people to call. That represents an externality because each additional user increased the benefit for other users, and was not compensated for creating that benefit. However, the flow of benefits was within the community of telephone users, but it was not multi-sided so the original telephone is a network but not a platform.

¹² See, e.g., E. Glen Weyl, “A Price Theory of Multi-Sided Platforms,” American Economic Review 100.4 (2010).

¹³ Ambrus, Attila and Rossella Argenziano, “Asymmetric Networks in Two-sided Markets,” American Economic Journals: Microeconomics, 1 (2009).

42. A classic example of a platform is found in the case of Microsoft DOS or Windows. In these cases, to grow and sustain the market Microsoft provided tools and APIs that with DOS created the Windows platform. These technologies made it much easier for developers to write applications. This drastically lowered the cost for DOS and Windows developers and increased the value of developer applications, and propelled the DOS and Windows operating systems into dominant market shares.¹⁴

43. Several Google technologies provide other examples. Google's first and most important offering is its search engine, a software product that allows users to search the World Wide Web. Google's search business is both a network good and a platform. It is a network good because as the number of users performing searches increases, users benefit (as in the telephone case) because the search engine learns what users are looking for and search results get better.¹⁵ But more importantly to Google's business is the fact that more searches means more users for advertisers to reach. Thus, Google's search business is a platform because it brings together advertisers and the users that those advertisers target – and both advertisers and users benefit from growth in the network of users. This is different from the telephone, where the increase in value is enjoyed by telephone users, but there is no equivalent group like advertisers that accesses and benefits from the growth in that community of users. As with Microsoft DOS and Windows, the Google search platform offers tools and APIs that make it easier for advertisers to write applications and manage their side of the business.¹⁶

44. The strategies used by platform operators to extract value can be extremely complex. Frequently, platform owners will integrate vertically such that they are participants in their own platforms. For example, TV stations—which can be thought of as platforms that connect viewers, program producers and advertisers—frequently produce or purchase programs that then appear on their broadcast platform.¹⁷ As discussed further below, Google through Android, can be thought of (in part) as a platform that connects phone users and app developers. However, Google has increasingly developed its own applications to run on the Android platform. This kind of vertical integration gives the platform owner additional strategies to maximize their revenue from the platform. For example, Google requires OEMs who have partnered with Google via a distribution agreement to include the Google Apps on their

¹⁴ Marco Iansiti and Roy Levien, *The Keystone Advantage*, HBS Press (2004).

¹⁵ Deposition of Urs Hoelzle, Nov. 14, 2015, page 301-02.

¹⁶ See, e.g., What is the AdWords API?, Google, <https://developers.google.com/adwords/api> (Last accessed Feb. 8, 2016).

¹⁷ Evens, Tom. "Clash of TV platforms: How broadcasters and distributors build platform leadership." 25th European Regional Conference of the International Telecommunications Society (ITS) (2014).

phones.¹⁸ This means that advertising customers who place ads in those apps can be assured of a large installed base of potential users, which may increase the revenue Google can collect for such ads.

45. Platforms can expand. As discussed further below, Google Search is a platform, which extracts revenue from advertisers by delivering to them a large number of users who come to the platform to get search results. Android extends Google's Search platform that connects phone users, phone manufacturers, app developers and advertisers. Indeed, substantial amounts of Android revenue are generated by directing search traffic to the Google Search platform. Thus, the success of Android, extends, reinforces and enhances the success of the Google Search platform.

3) Platform competition

46. Competition in platform markets is different from that of other markets. Because of the importance of size in generating network effects, it will often be the case that only a small number of competitors can ultimately survive in a given platform market.¹⁹ And the process of self-fulfilling expectations in the growth of networks means that what happens in the early phases of market development may determine long-run outcomes.²⁰ To oversimplify only slightly, while all firms want to increase their customer base, for firms engaged in platform competition, this incentive is amplified by network externalities, then amplified again by the effect of today's customer base on future growth, then amplified again by the fact that growth may determine not just profitability but ultimate life or death of the firm.

47. Because of the dynamic nature of competition in platform markets, several important aspects of competition and market evolution emerge: (1) scale and tipping points or "critical mass," (2) early entry and (3) control over decisions such as pricing and compatibility. I consider each of these in turn.

¹⁸ Hill, Brandon. *Google to Require as Many as 20 of its Apps to be Preinstalled on Android Devices*. Daily Tech (Sept. 26, 2014). <http://www.dailytech.com/Google+to+Require+as+Many+as+20+of+Its+Apps+to+be+Preinstalled+on+Android+Devices/article36620.htm>. Note: I understand the Android Open Source Project (AOSP) does not require applications to be included; however I understand that very few if any phone OEMs ship only with the open source version of Android. See Deposition Testimony of Felix Lin, Dec 14, 2015, page 85. (A. Yes. I can't think of anybody -- like I said, I can't think of anybody who just ships a phone with only Android open source and nothing else.)

¹⁹ Evans, David S. and Richard Schmalensee, "Failure to Launch: Critical Mass in Platform Businesses," Review of Network Economics 9.4 (2010). Ambrus, Attila and Rossella Argenziano, "Asymmetric Networks in Two-sided Markets," American Economic Journals: Microeconomics, 1 (2009).

²⁰ Michael Katz and Carl Shapiro, Network Externalities, Competition, and Compatibility, 75 (3) The American Economic Review (1985).

a) Scale and tipping points

48. Achieving scale means attracting the critical mass of users that is required for a platform to compete effectively. As there are often fixed costs of adoption, users must either realize immediately or expect to realize sufficient benefits from joining the platform in order to choose to do so. The point at which a platform has enough users so that other users believe that the benefits from joining exceed the costs of adoption is often referred to as achieving scale or reaching a “tipping point.”²¹ Once a platform reaches scale it may continue to attract additional users and eventually dominate the entire market (in a winner-take-all environment), or it may remain as a viable option among a few platforms that co-exist and split the market. Ultimately, the difference between platform markets that are winner-take-all from those that have a few viable options is based on the strength of the network effects relative to how differentiated the platforms are.²²

49. A social network like Facebook is an example of a network with particularly strong network effects where the network gains significant value with each addition of friends and family to connect with. It is also one that achieved scale early on by limiting the pool of users to single campuses, then multiple campuses, and then eventually the whole world. Early indications suggest that the on-call car service industry might be one with weaker network effects as we observe viable competition between Uber and Lyft, as well as continued (but weakened) competition from traditional taxi services. Each provides some product differentiation and benefits from network effects that provide value to users as more users join the network. But those network effects have not been so strong as to present a winner-take-all situation.

b) Early entry

50. Early entry in platform markets is important because the value of a platform will increase nonlinearly with the number of users. This means that a platform with even a small but significant user base will be much, much more valuable than a platform with no users. A late entrant is, by definition, at a disadvantage. First, late entrants will start with a smaller user base than previous entrants, making them less attractive to users both in absolute terms (as they are, in fact, smaller) and in perception (users may expect them to remain smaller because they are later). Consequently, users may be less willing to join late

²¹ Evans, David S. and Richard Schmalensee, “Failure to Launch: Critical Mass in Platform Businesses,” Review of Network Economics 9.4 (2010).

²² Hagiu, Andrei. “Multi-sided platforms: From microfoundations to design and expansion strategies.” Harvard Business School Strategy Unit Working Paper 09-115 (2009). See also White, Alexander and E. Glen Weyl, “Insulated Platform Competition,” Working Paper, http://papers.ssrn.com/sol3/papers.cfm?abstract_id=1694317, (2015); Zhu, Feng, and Marco Iansiti. “Entry into platform-based markets.” Strategic Management Journal 33.1 (2012).

entrants. Second, users that have joined other platforms may face large switching costs that lock them in to their previous choices. Indeed, even if a late entrant exhibits significant superiority over early entrants in terms of price and/or product quality, it thus may only be able to attract “unattached” users, or those that have not yet joined another platform; there may not be enough of such users to achieve scale.²³ Finally, an early entrant can exacerbate these challenges and deter further entry of platforms by aggressively acquiring new users and making it more difficult for users to switch.²⁴ For these reasons, early entry into a platform market can be crucial to success.

c) Control of key decisions

51. Crucial to establishing scale and success for a platform is the ability to control certain key decisions, including pricing and compatibility. Platform controllers engage in price discrimination and charge different prices to different groups of users. For example, a platform may subsidize certain groups (e.g., charging below cost) and charge higher prices to others in order to increase the utilization of its platform.²⁵ A platform controller may also pay certain users to forgo use of competitors’ platforms.²⁶

52. Since the benefit that the platform product is “selling” is the network effects generated by a large user base, it is crucial that all of the users contribute effectively to that benefit. This requires compatibility, meaning that all users can interact with the platform in a consistent way.²⁷ Uber Technologies, Inc. is an on-call ride sharing service that matches available drivers with passengers through a mobile app. Passengers “call” cars by requesting a pickup at a given location. Once a driver picks up the passenger, the app automatically meters the ride, maps the route and completes payment through the user’s stored credit card. The payment for the fare is then split between the driver and Uber. Uber has gained passenger adoption, in part, based on the consistency of the experience for both the passenger and the driver. As a passenger, I can count on virtually the same user experience, whether being picked up in San Mateo or Wellington. Uber, as a platform, ensures the consistency of the experience. This is an example of how platform owners typically use a combination of technical and contractual means to ensure compatibility on all sides of the platform. It is also worth noting in the context of my

²³ Farrell, Joseph and Paul Klemperer, “Coordination and Lock-In: Competition with Switching Costs and Network Effects,” in Handbook of Industrial Organization, Vol 3.. M. Armstrong and R. Porter (eds.), North-Holland (2007).

²⁴ Klemperer, Paul, “Competition when Consumers have Switching Costs,” *Review of Economic Studies* 62 (1995).

²⁵ E. Glen Weyl, “A Price Theory of Multi-Sided Platforms,” *American Economic Review* 100.4 (2010).

²⁶ Lee, Robin, “Vertical Integration and Exclusivity in Platform and Two-Sided Markets,” *American Economic Review* 103.7 (2013). See also Hagiu, Andrei and Robin Lee, “Exclusivity and Control,” *Journal of Economics and Management Strategy*, 20.3 (2011).

²⁷ Farrell, Joseph and Garth Saloner, “Standardization, Compatibility, and Innovation,” *Rand Journal of Economics*, 16.1 (1985).

discussion above regarding tipping points and network effects that both Uber and Lyft (an Uber competitor) provide competing platforms, and each has been able to achieve necessary scale in a market whose network effects are material but not so significant that a winner-takes-all environment has yet emerged.

B. The Java platform

53. Java was created by Sun in the early 1990s.²⁸ In 2010, Sun was acquired by Oracle Corporation and became Oracle America, Inc. (collectively, “Oracle”). Java is an application development platform, which includes a set of technology resources for building and running computer programs.²⁹ The Java platform consists of three main elements: (1) the Java computer programming language, (2) the Java Runtime Environment, which features the Java Virtual Machine, and (3) the Java Application Programming Interfaces (“Java API packages”).³⁰ Collectively, I refer to these three elements as the Java platform.

54. The Java platform was designed to facilitate portability, meaning that programs written for one computing environment, such as a Macbook laptop, can also run on a different type of hardware, such as an HP desktop computer.³¹ The Java platform provides software developers with confidence that the programs they write for a particular Java specification will work in any computing environment that contains the Java runtime environment for that specification. This concept of portability is embodied in the Java principle, “write once, run anywhere.”³²

55. In the following section I describe why the Java platform is a platform good in the economic sense, describe the growth of the Java community, and explain how Oracle monetizes Java.³³

²⁸ Oracle, Java History Timeline, <http://oracle.com.edgesuite.net/timeline/java/> (last visited February 8, 2016)

²⁹ *New to Java Programming – Introducing the Java Platform*, Oracle (<http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/topics/newtojava/intro-139083.html>), accessed February 8, 2016.

³⁰ See JDK 5.0 Documentation, Sun, <https://web.archive.org/web/20100330080522/http://java.sun.com/j2se/1.5.0/docs/index.html>

³¹ Nick Langley, Write Once, Run Anywhere?, Computer Weekly, May 2002 (<http://www.computerweekly.com/feature/Write-once-run-anywhere>).

³² Nick Langley, Write Once, Run Anywhere?, Computer Weekly, May 2002 (<http://www.computerweekly.com/feature/Write-once-run-anywhere>).

³³ From here forward, I will use “Oracle” to mean Oracle and/or Sun, as the owner of Java, unless a more specific intention is explicitly mentioned.

1) Java as a “platform” in the economic sense.

56. Java is a platform good because it facilitates the seamless interaction of applications and operating systems or devices. It provides the benefit of making connections between parties who build or sell operating systems and/or devices, and parties who build or sell software applications or “apps.” Apps connect to operating systems/devices to run. Device makers need to connect to apps because the availability of apps makes the devices more valuable to consumers, hence increasing device sales.

57. Positive externalities play an important role in the Java community. The value of a device increases the more apps are written for it, and the value of an app increases the more devices it can run on. The importance of these externalities to the Java platform is illustrated by the concept of “write once, run anywhere,” which is seen as critical to the Java strategy.³⁴ The idea of “write once, run anywhere” is that a single program can be run on any machine compatible with the Java platform for which that program was written.³⁵ According to Professor Douglas C. Schmidt:

Compatibility of the Java API packages is beneficial to developers since it allows them to develop applications that run without change in a wide range of operating environments (consisting of different operating systems and hardware versions), thereby simplifying the effort required to evolve their applications to meet new customer requirements and business opportunities.³⁶

58. The positive externalities within the Java platform market are reinforced in many ways. For example, there is structured and informal knowledge sharing among developers, the ability of a developer to use code written for one project on another of the developer’s projects (development investment), and compatibility between generations of Java-based products. Furthermore, just as expectations play a role in growing a new network, expectations play an important role in the survival of the Java platform. When the Java platform is expected to be successful and in demand in the future, its aspects are taught in schools and colleges, growing the network further and increasing its value.

2) Java monetization

59. Oracle monetizes the Java platform through licensing. The licensing structure is designed for Java to balance the goals of broad adoption and revenue generation. As part of this strategy, Oracle offers both

³⁴ *Creation of Java for Platform Independence – WORA*, Merit Campus, <http://java.meritcampus.com/t/72/Creation-of-java>

³⁵ Deposition of Donald Smith, Nov. 20, 2015, at pg. 197. (“One of the key value propositions of Java is the ‘write once, run anywhere’ capability. So yes, application developers like the fact that when they write an application, they can run it many places”).

³⁶ Expert Report of Douglas Schmidt, January 8, 2016.

commercial and open source licenses for the Java platform, and allows some categories of users to use Java free of charge, while others pay for it.

60. I understand that there are two broad categories of commercial Java licensees: one for application developers and another for companies developing devices that include the Java platform. The second category typically consists of Original Equipment Manufacturers (OEMs), and/or companies who create operating system platforms for OEMs' products.³⁷

61. The first category of commercial licensees, application developers, write software programs built using the Java platform. Application developers typically license Java under a royalty-free binary code license (BCL), which grants them rights to distribute the Java platform components necessary to run programs written in the Java language on general purpose desktop, laptop and server computers.³⁸ Because of Java's "write once, run anywhere" commitment, application developers know that their programs will work in the relevant Java-enabled computing environments. From an economic perspective, it makes sense to offer a license to Java app developers royalty-free, because the size and diversity of the network of Java-enabled apps creates the value of the Java ecosystem that Oracle is then able to monetize with its second category of commercial licenses.

62. The second broad category of Java commercial licensees includes OEMs who embed the Java platform, (e.g., Samsung) in hardware, and companies who create system software platforms for OEMs (e.g., Symbian).³⁹ This set of customers typically licenses Java on a royalty-bearing basis.⁴⁰ I understand that there are a variety of different fee structures for royalty-bearing Java licenses, but that royalty payments generally relate to shipment volume of hardware containing the Java platform (e.g., mobile phones, e-readers, GPS systems, etc.).

63. As discussed further below, Sun and then Oracle had extended discussions with Google about licensing Java for use in Android. But instead of taking a license, Google copied the Java API packages and used them in Android, allowing Google to benefit immediately from the large community of Java developers and from the OEM and carrier ecosystem's long-established trust in Java, all without compensating Sun/Oracle.

³⁷ This royalty-bearing category includes applications distributed on single-purpose dedicated hardware systems (e.g. radar systems), as opposed to general purpose desktop, laptop, and server computers..

³⁸ OAGOOGL2000644741.

³⁹ OAGOOGL0025585032.

⁴⁰ OAGOOGL0025585032 .

64. As I explain above, the Java platform is a network good, the value of which increases as more developers join the community, more applications are developed for consumers in Java, and more devices use Java-based software. As one would expect, exploiting these network effects by maintaining the integrity of the Java platform ecosystem has always been an objective of Java's licensing. Oracle ensures this coherence by requiring licensees to maintain compatibility with the Java specification. Oracle's mechanism for enforcing the compatibility is a suite of technical tests known as the "Technology Compatibility Kit" or "TCK" (also sometimes referred to as the JCK). Commercial Java licensees must use and pass the TCK to ensure compliance and compatibility with the Java specifications, which is the set of technical requirements with which the developer's implementation of Java must comply.⁴¹

3) Java community growth and licensing successes across multiple form factors⁴²

65. In this section, I summarize the historical success of Oracle's Java technology - the growth of the Java developer community, its adoption in multiple form factors over the years, its widespread licensing for use in those consumer and enterprise devices and hardware, and Sun and Oracle's continued efforts to invest in Java for its innovation and adaptation to new form factors and functionality. This is particularly important to my assessment of market harm because it proves the durability of Java's licensing revenue across form factors, and supports my findings that Oracle suffers harm in each of the markets where Android does or may compete.

66. From its launch, Java enjoyed rapid adoption. In 1997, the Java platform featured the second most popular software programming language in the world and could claim about 400,000 developers.⁴³ By 1998, Sun had 138 Java licensees, the JDK had been downloaded 2 million times and there were about 700,000 Java developers worldwide.⁴⁴ By 2000, the number of Java developers had grown to 2.5 million.⁴⁵ To help spur the popularity of Java and connect the Java community, Sun launched the JavaOne

⁴¹ Java Technology Licensing Update, Java Community Process (2014), https://jcp.org/ja/press/news/licensing_update. See also OAGOOGL2000179881, at -9885; See also <https://www.jcp.org/en/resources/tdk> & <http://docs.oracle.com/javase/1.5.0/docs/relnotes/license.html>

⁴² A form factor refers to the size, configuration, or physical arrangement of a computing device. For instance, notebook computers are a form factor because they all take the same "clamshell" form, are typically rectangular or square, and open to a keyboard on the flat surface and a screen on the vertical surface. See, e.g., "Form Factor," TechTarget.com, <http://whatis.techtarget.com/definition/form-factor>.

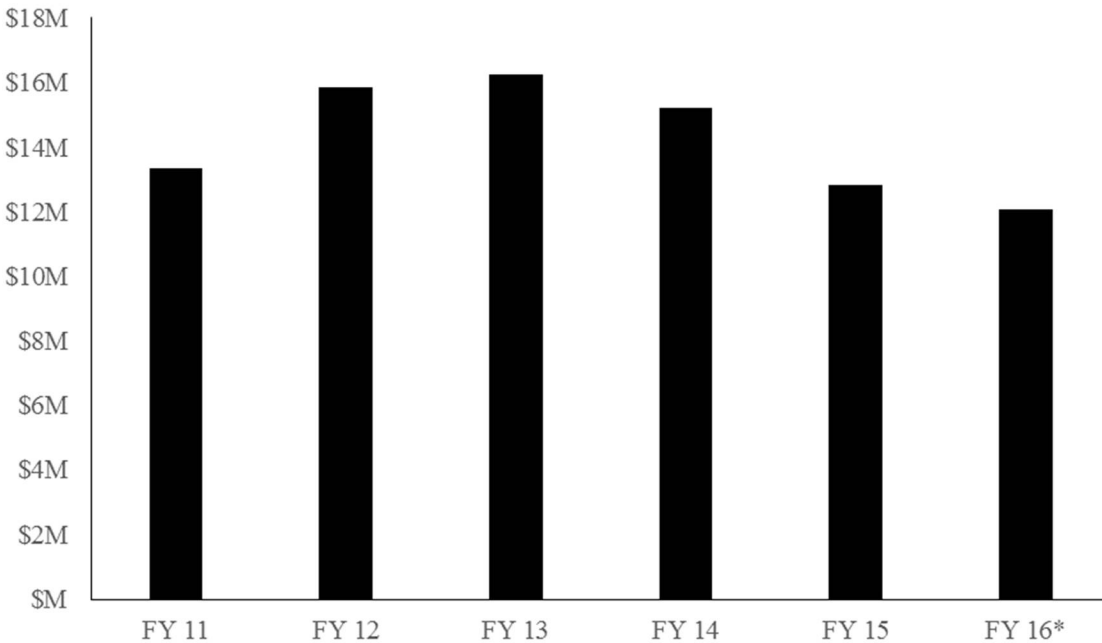
⁴³ Java Timeline, Java, <http://oracle.com.edgesuite.net/timeline/java/> (last visited February 8, 2016)

⁴⁴ Bill Petro, *JavaOne 1998- Java on the March*, <http://www.billpetro.com/Publications/javaonemarch.html> (last visited January 22, 2016).

⁴⁵ Alan Saracevic, *Sun's Java Fest Draws 25,000*, SF Gate (June 7, 2000), <http://www.sfgate.com/business/article/Sun-s-Java-fest-draws-25-000-3058399.php>.

conference in 1996, with 6,000 attendees.⁴⁶ The JavaOne conference enjoyed similar growth, with 25,000 community members attending the 2000 event.⁴⁷ Figure 2 below shows Oracle's spend on Java events over time.

Figure 2: Oracle Investments in Java Events (2011-2015 and 2016 est.)⁴⁸



67. The Java platform was integrated into many device categories. By 2000, the Java platform was powering ATMs, two-way pagers, mobile phones, personal organizers, games and game machines, cameras, industrial controllers, point-of-sale terminals, desktops, servers, and more. As technology progressed for different uses and with increased computing power, Java evolved to keep pace.⁴⁹ Figure 3 below shows examples of different companies that licensed Java over the last 20 years.

⁴⁶ Java Timeline, Java, <http://oracle.com.edgesuite.net/timeline/java/> (last visited February 8, 2016).

⁴⁷ Alan Saracevic, *Sun's Java Fest Draws 25,000*, SF Gate (June 7, 2000), <http://www.sfgate.com/business/article/Sun-s-Java-fest-draws-25-000-3058399.php>.

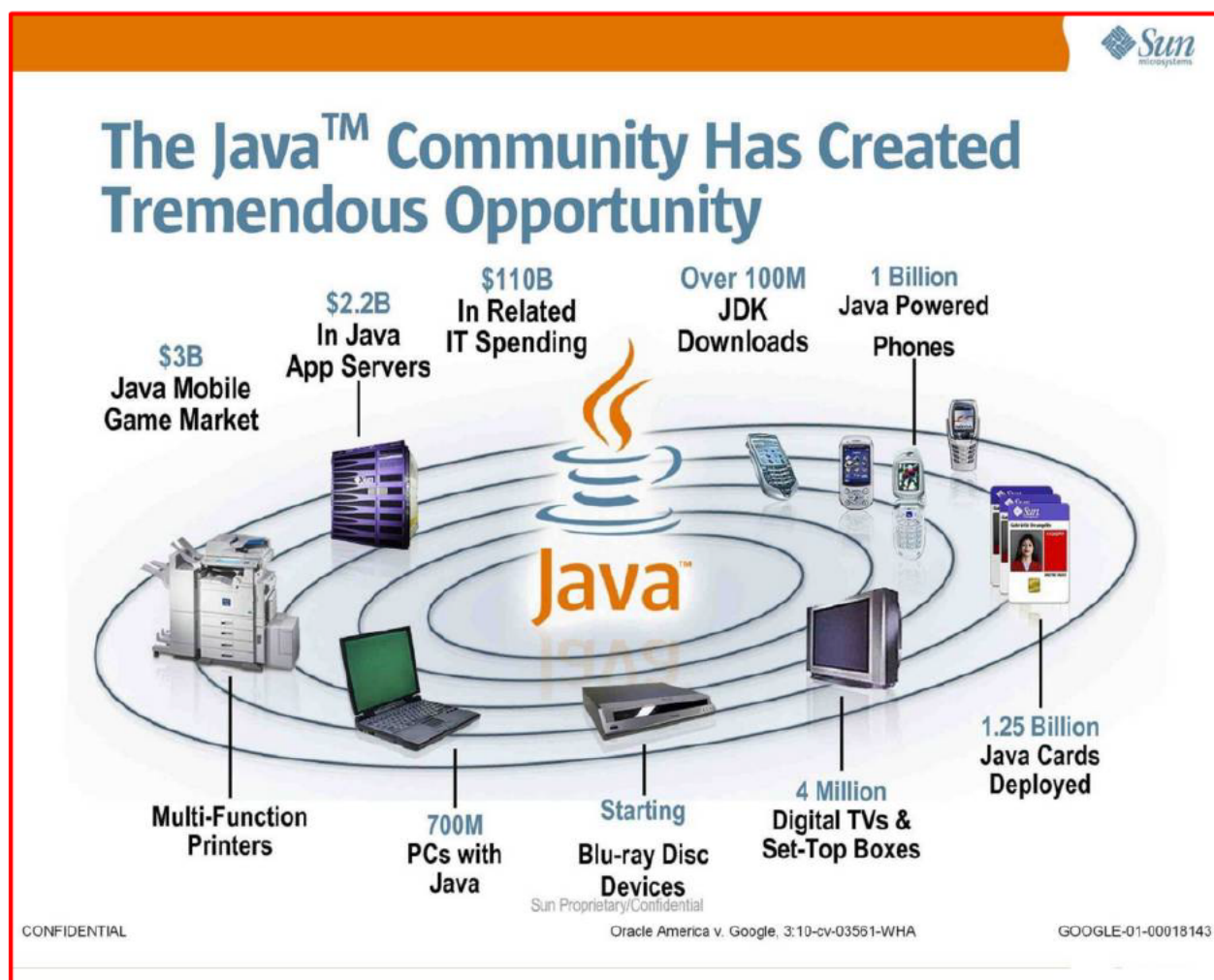
⁴⁸ 2015.12.16 Oracle's Supplemental Response to Google Interrogatory Response. This does not represent Oracle's complete investment, but rather is an estimate of spending on events alone.

⁴⁹ GOOGLE-01-00018140, at 143; Rick Cook, *Java jazzes point of sale systems with new APIs*, (<http://www.javaworld.com/article/2071277/java-se/java-jazzes-point-of-sale-systems-with-new-apis.html>) Accessed January 27, 2016. <http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/systems/index-156187.html> <http://www-03.ibm.com/systems/z/os/zos/tools/java/>; Deposition of Alan Brenner December 15, 2015 at page 59.

Figure 3: Examples of Java Device Categories over Time⁵⁰

68. Today, Java continues to be licensed by a wide range of software and hardware developers and manufacturers. In addition to the products mentioned above, these products include e-readers, tablets, printers, smart televisions, GPS systems, vending machines, and many other computing devices. Figure 4 below, from a 2006 Sun presentation on the widespread success of the Java platform that Google obtained and had in its possession, highlights the platform's actual success and potential for further growth across many markets.

⁵⁰ See Exhibit 18 for sources.

Figure 4: Depiction of Java Community from Sun Presentation⁵¹

In Section IX, I discuss how many of these device categories have been affected by the events giving rise to this case.

C. Google

69. The defendant in this case is Google, a technology company that was founded by Larry Page and Sergey Brin in 1998. Google went public in 2004 and in 2015 became a wholly-owned subsidiary of Alphabet, Inc.⁵²

⁵¹ GOOGLE-01-00018140, at 143.

⁵² Google, Inc. Form 10-Q For the Quarterly Period Ended September 30, 2015, p. 31

1) Google as a platform

70. Google is a platform business.⁵³ Google's search engine is its first and most successful product. Google's search engine provides users with relevant webpage links in response to the user entering a search query. Users do not directly pay for search results. Instead, Google generates money by selling advertising against search requests, called "queries." Google collects user data regarding search and other online behavioral preferences, which is used to improve Google products and to provide a variety of targeting options to its advertisers. Over the years, Google has introduced a number of other user-facing products and services (*e.g.*, Gmail, Maps, and Shopping). These Google products are also largely provided to users for free and funded by targeting and other advertising.

71. As a platform search and advertising business, Google serves three primary constituents: (1) users, (2) advertisers, and (3) other websites that syndicate Google search and advertising services. Google has recognized this need to balance these three different "customers" since its early days. The following excerpt from Google's S-1 offering statement describes each of the customers of Google's platform at the time of Google's IPO in 2004.

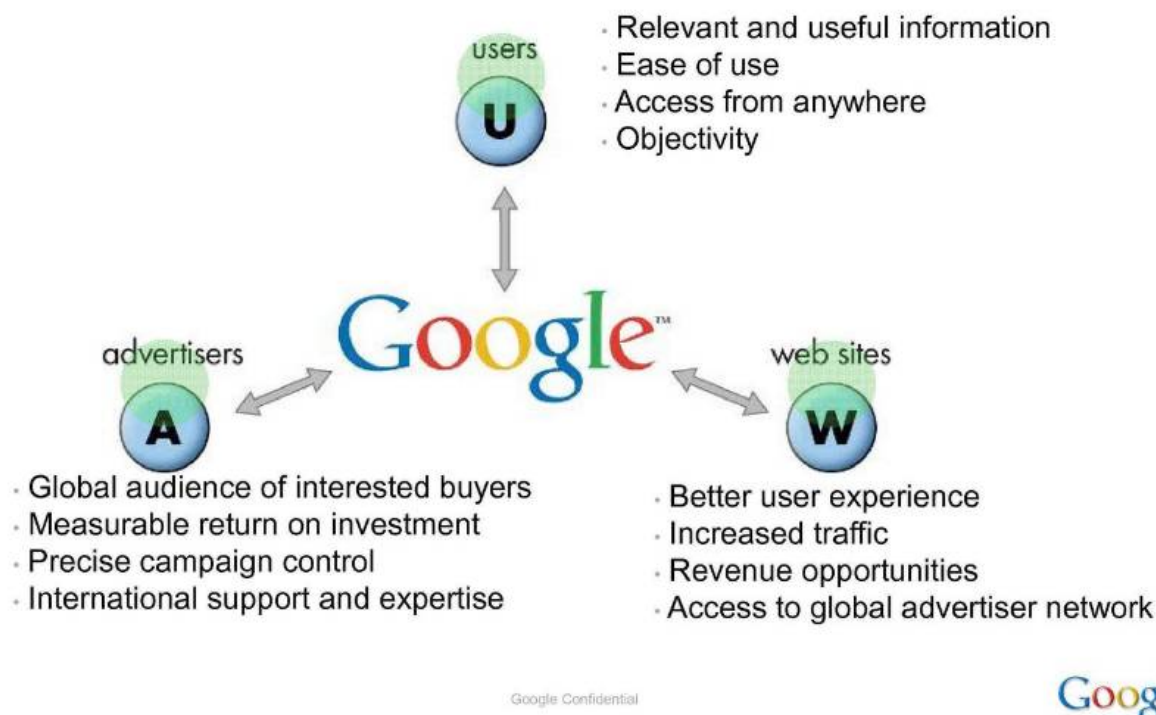
We serve three primary constituencies:

- *Users.* We provide users with products and services that enable people to more quickly and easily find, create and organize information that is useful to them.
- *Advertisers.* We provide advertisers our Google AdWords program, an auction-based advertising program that enables them to deliver relevant ads targeted to search results or web content. Our AdWords program provides advertisers with a cost-effective way to deliver ads to customers across Google sites and through the Google Network.
- *Web sites.* We provide members of our Google Network our Google AdSense program, which allows these members to deliver AdWords ads that are relevant to the search results or content on their web sites. We share most of the fees these ads generate with our Google Network members—creating an important revenue stream for them⁵⁴

Similarly, Figure 5 shows a 2007 internal presentation describing how Google's platform business model is in service of these three constituencies.

⁵³ See generally, Google 2013 10-K.

⁵⁴ Google, Inc. SEC Filing Form S-1 (2004), at pg. 37.

Figure 5: Google's platform business model (2007)⁵⁵**Google's Business Model Is Based On Connecting Users, Advertisers And Web Sites**

72. Serving all three of these constituent groups remains critical to Google's commercial success. Users are important because they are the "eyeballs" or audience that attracts advertisers. Web sites are important because they act as a network of billboards, extending the potential advertising space beyond that of Google-owned properties. Advertisers have a direct impact on Google's business because they collectively pay Google billions of dollars for access to the users and ad space. Google has achieved great commercial success by consistently making sure that all sides of its markets are satisfied.

2) Google's monetization model

73. Google services are not "free." The vast majority of users do not pay Google directly to use its services such as Search. Google captures its users' online behavior and then derives significant revenue from selling ads.⁵⁶ The advertisers are essentially paying for access to Google's users and for the user-targeting that is made possible through Google's data collection activities. In this way, Google was an

⁵⁵ GOOGLE-01-00025375, at 382.

⁵⁶ Google, Inc. Form 10-K, (2004-2014).

early adopter of the web-based online advertising business model, which is based on the economic principle of subsidized pricing in a platform market.⁵⁷ One group on the platform pays (advertisers) and the other group (users) does not. Google has a number of advertiser-facing products that connect advertisers with Google's audience, two of which are particularly important to understand: AdWords and AdSense.

a) Google AdWords

74. Google introduced its flagship AdWords product in 2000. AdWords allows businesses to place ads alongside Google search results using a self-serve online interface.⁵⁸ Figure 5 below, taken from a Harvard Business School case about Google and its advertising business, shows an example of the advertiser interface for buying AdWords Ads in 2006.

⁵⁷ Anderson, Chris. "The Economics of Giving it Away". The Wall Street Journal. January 31, 2009. <http://www.wsj.com/articles/SB123335678420235003>.

⁵⁸ Google, Inc. Form S-1, p. 37

Figure 6: 2006 Google AdWords advertiser interface⁵⁹

2. Write your ad [?]

What site will your ad link to?
Users who click your ad will be sent to this website.

http:// [text box]
Example: http://www.example.com/products/item.htm

What will your ad say?
You can write your own ad, or start with free ad ideas from Google.
[The five keys to powerful ads](#) | [Editorial Guidelines](#)

☒ **I'll write my ad** ☐ **Give me ideas**

All text ads contain a title, two lines of descriptive text, and a display URL. Make sure to include information that will help customers understand your business.

Luxury cruise to Mars
Visit the Red Planet in style.
Low-gravity fun for everyone!
[www.example.com](#)

This is how your ad will look.

< Enter headline here > 25 max

< Enter line 1 here > 35 max

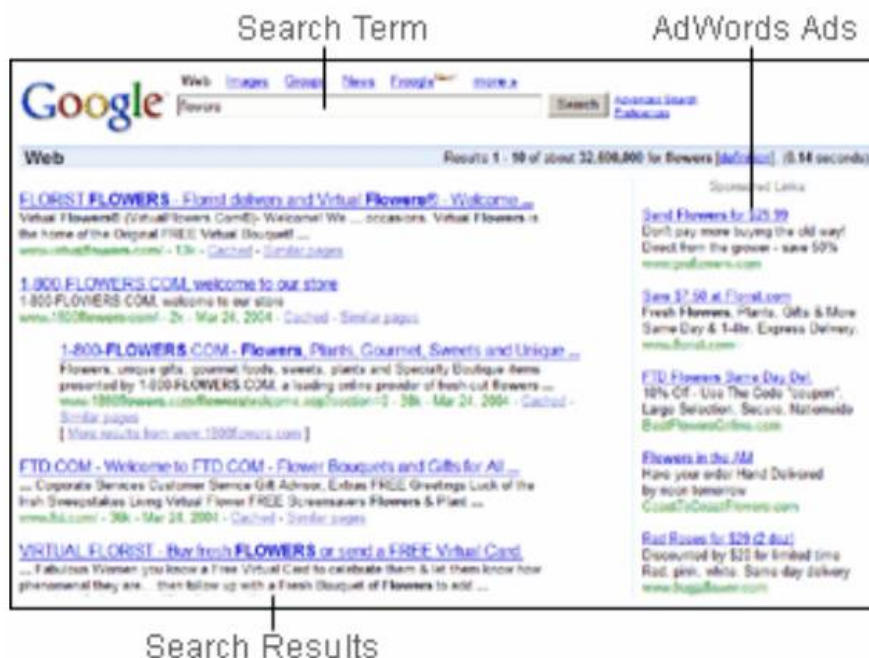
< Enter line 2 here > 35 max

[www.example.com](#) [\[edit\]](#)

Advertisers can sign up for a Google account and use the online tools pictured above to buy advertisements.

75. The ads purchased through AdWords originally appeared alongside Google.com search results. Figure 6 below, reproduced from the same Harvard Business School case study, shows what AdWords ads looked like in 2006.

⁵⁹ Moon, Youngme. "Google Advertising," Harvard Business School. October 11, 2007.

Figure 7: Google AdWords advertiser interface⁶⁰

76. Google AdWords was very successful from the start, allowing Google to become profitable in 2001.⁶¹ Within a few years, Google had tens of thousands of advertisers—large and small—using its AdWords platform. In 2006, *The Economist* referred to Google as “the world’s most valuable online advertising agency disguised as a search engine.”⁶² Today, there are more than 2 million publishers who use AdWords.⁶³

b) Google AdSense and the Google Display Network

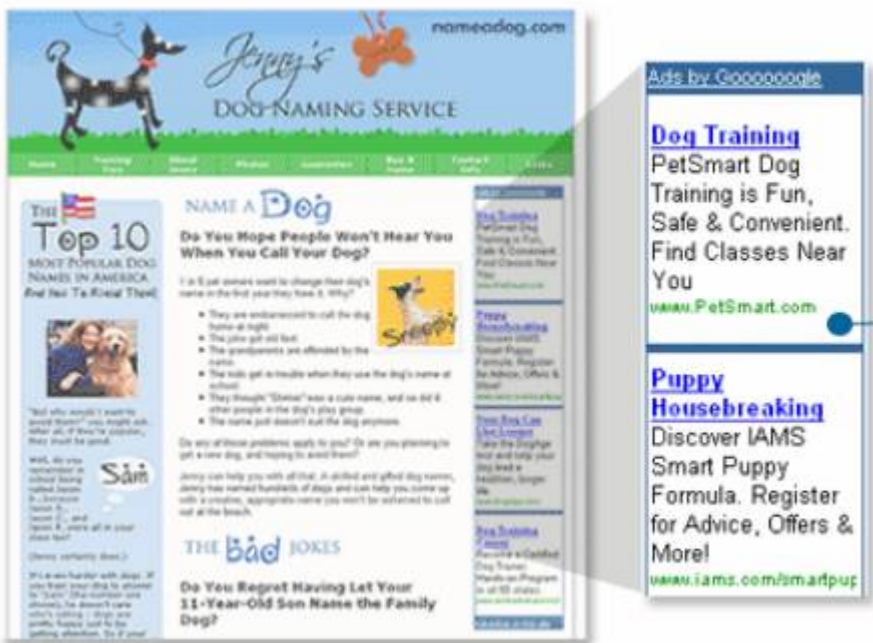
77. In early 2003, Google launched a complementary ad product to AdWords called AdSense. This product is targeted at owners of websites (content providers large and small), and provides them with the ability to make money from their websites. Site-owners allow Google to display relevant ads alongside their content, and Google facilitates transactions with the advertisers who wish to buy ads. Figure 8 below shows a 2006 example of an AdSense ad.

⁶⁰ Moon, Youngme. “Google Advertising,” Harvard Business School. October 11, 2007.

⁶¹ Google, Inc. Form S-1, p. 37.

⁶² “The ultimate marketing machine.” *The Economist*. July 6, 2006. <http://www.economist.com/node/7138905>.

⁶³ *About the Google Display Network*, Google, <https://support.google.com/adwords/answer/2404190?hl=en> (Last accessed Feb. 8, 2016).

Figure 8: AdSense example, 2006⁶⁴

Google shares a portion of the payment from the ad-placer with the site-owner, and keeps the remaining portion of the revenue. Site-owners that use Google AdSense to serve ads on their websites are called Google Network Members.⁶⁵ As more and more companies signed up with AdSense, the reach and potential audience for Google ads increased.

78. While the users on Google's platform do not directly pay for services, they provide value to Google as an audience to which ads are served and as a rich source of data. Google uses user data for several purposes. First, search queries and click-through behavior data are used to improve Google's products, which propel the positive feedback loop of attracting more users. Second, user data plays an important role in Google's ad products. Google allows advertisers to "target" based on user information such as gender, age, and interests. Ad targeting may increase the performance and perceived value of ads, allowing Google to extract higher prices from potential advertisers.

79. Google first introduced ad targeting based on user search behavior in 2008.⁶⁶ An article in the New York Times describing the introduction of Google's search-based targeting based on searches

⁶⁴ Moon, Youngme. "Google Advertising," Harvard Business School. October 11, 2007.

⁶⁵ Google Inc., Annual Report (Form 10-K) (2004), p.21.

⁶⁶ Hansell, Saul. "Google Tests Using Your Search Data to Tailor Ads to You." The New York Times. June 26, 2008. http://bits.blogs.nytimes.com/2008/06/26/google-tests-using-your-search-data-to-tailor-ads-to-you/?_r=0.

describes the public's contemporaneous concerns about Google's use of data. Customers were unclear how Google would use the large amount of information collected about them through their use of Google products.

A key factor in the debate is what Google, with its vast scale, does or may do with the data it has. Google controls two-thirds of the search market. It runs by far the biggest advertising network. Its DoubleClick unit is the biggest provider of ad technology to publishers and advertisers. Its toolbar is installed in many browsers, including every new Dell computer. And Google Analytics is gathering information from millions of Web sites.⁶⁷

Privacy and Google's use of user data continues to be a prominent issue in public policy.⁶⁸

80. Today, Google offers many different types of ad targeting which are derived from information it collects about users interacting with its products. For example, advertisers may elect to target their ads based on "interest." The Google AdWords Support website describes this as allowing advertisers to "reach people based on their interests, such as sports or travel, even when they visit a page related to a different subject on the Display Network."⁶⁹ Google also offers users the ability to control the types of ads they see on Google services.⁷⁰

81. Google's ad products, including AdWords and AdSense have been enormously successful. Google had generated tens of billions of dollars from advertising over the years, as shown below in Figure 9.⁷¹

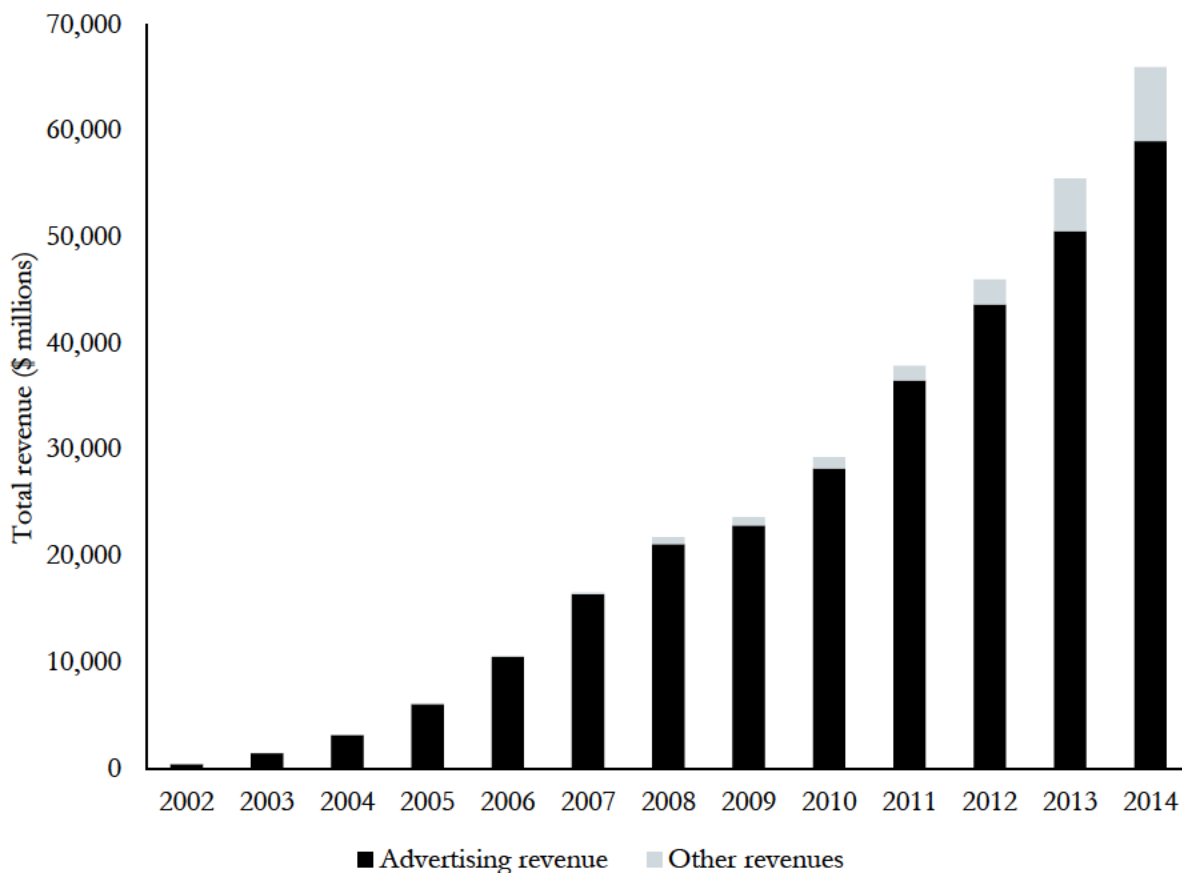
⁶⁷ Hansell, Saul. "Google Tests Using Your Search Data to Tailor Ads to You." The New York Times. June 26, 2008. http://bits.blogs.nytimes.com/2008/06/26/google-tests-using-your-search-data-to-tailor-ads-to-you/?_r=0.

⁶⁸ Morey, Timothy, et al., "Customer Data: Designing for Transparency and Trust". Harvard Business Review. May 2015. <https://hbr.org/2015/05/customer-data-designing-for-transparency-and-trust>.

⁶⁹ Reaching Your Audience on Websites, Google, <https://support.google.com/adwords/answer/2404239?hl=en>.

⁷⁰ "About Ads Settings." Google AdWords Support. <https://support.google.com/ads/answer/2662856?hl=en>.

⁷¹ Levin, Jonathan, "The Economics of Internet Markets," *Advances in Economics and Econometrics*, Edited by D. Acemoglu, M. Arellano, and E. Dekel, 2013.

Figure 9: Google Worldwide Revenue (2002-2014)⁷²

82. Google's online advertising revenues have represented between 90% and 99% of its total revenues over time, as shown in Table 2 below. The "other" Google revenue primarily consists of Google Play Store content (e.g. apps, music and movies).⁷³

Table 2: Google Advertising Revenue as a Percent of Total Revenue (2002-2014)⁷⁴

Year	Ad revenue as a % of Total Revenue
2002	94%
2003	97%
2004	99%

⁷² Google, Inc., Annual Report (Form 10-K) (2004-2014).

⁷³ Google, Inc., Annual Report (Form 10-K) (2014), p. 25.

⁷⁴ Google, Inc., Annual Report (Form 10-K) (2004-2014).

Year	Ad revenue as a % of Total Revenue
2005	99%
2006	99%
2007	99%
2008	97%
2009	97%
2010	96%
2011	96%
2012	95%
2013	91%
2014	90%

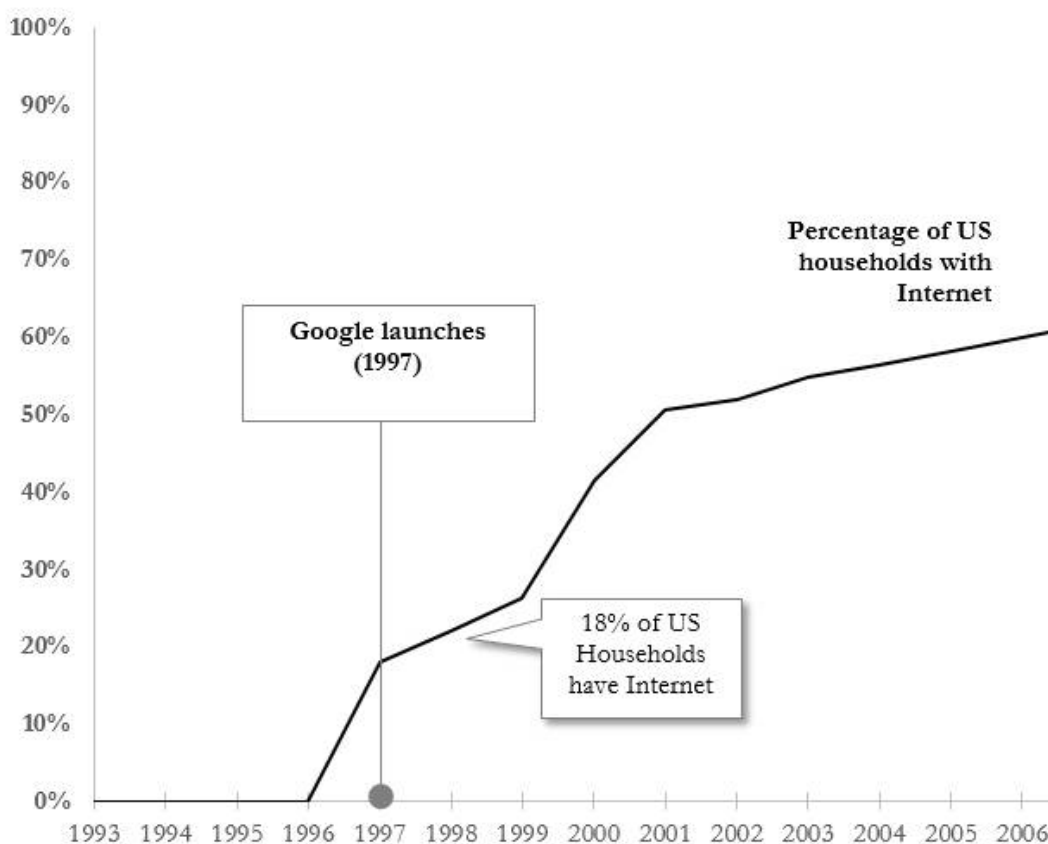
3) Google's platform playbook

83. Google's success in PC search was based on a strategy that employed the platform economics described above – early entry, scale and control. In this section, I describe more specifically how this platform strategy enabled Google's rapid growth from 2000 to 2007.

a) Early entry and building of scale

84. When Google launched in 1997, the market for search advertising was just beginning to emerge.⁷⁵ In fact, the number of people connecting to the Internet and using computers to browse the World Wide Web was just beginning to take off. According to the International Telecommunications Union, an organization which tracks telecommunications technology adoption and use, in 1997, only 18% of US households were connected to the Internet, as shown below in Figure 10.

⁷⁵ Google registered its domain name on September 15, 1997, and the firm was incorporated on September 4, 1998. *Our History In Depth, Google*, www.google.com/about/company/history (Last visited Feb. 7, 2016).

Figure 10: Percentage of US Households with Internet (1993-2006)⁷⁶

As the number of connected Internet users increased, search engines emerged as a way for users to find the growing body of information on the internet.⁷⁷

85. While today Google is synonymous with internet search, in 2000, other competitors, such as Yahoo!, Ask, and AOL were all vying to capture the emerging search market. The platform nature of the search market means it is likely to sustain only a few competitors. Therefore entering early and securing a portion of the market was critical. Google's actions indicate it understood the importance of acquiring significant share early. From 2000 to 2007, Google used a strategy of rapidly securing market share (and building scale) through syndication and distribution arrangements. I describe the nature of each of these types of arrangements below.

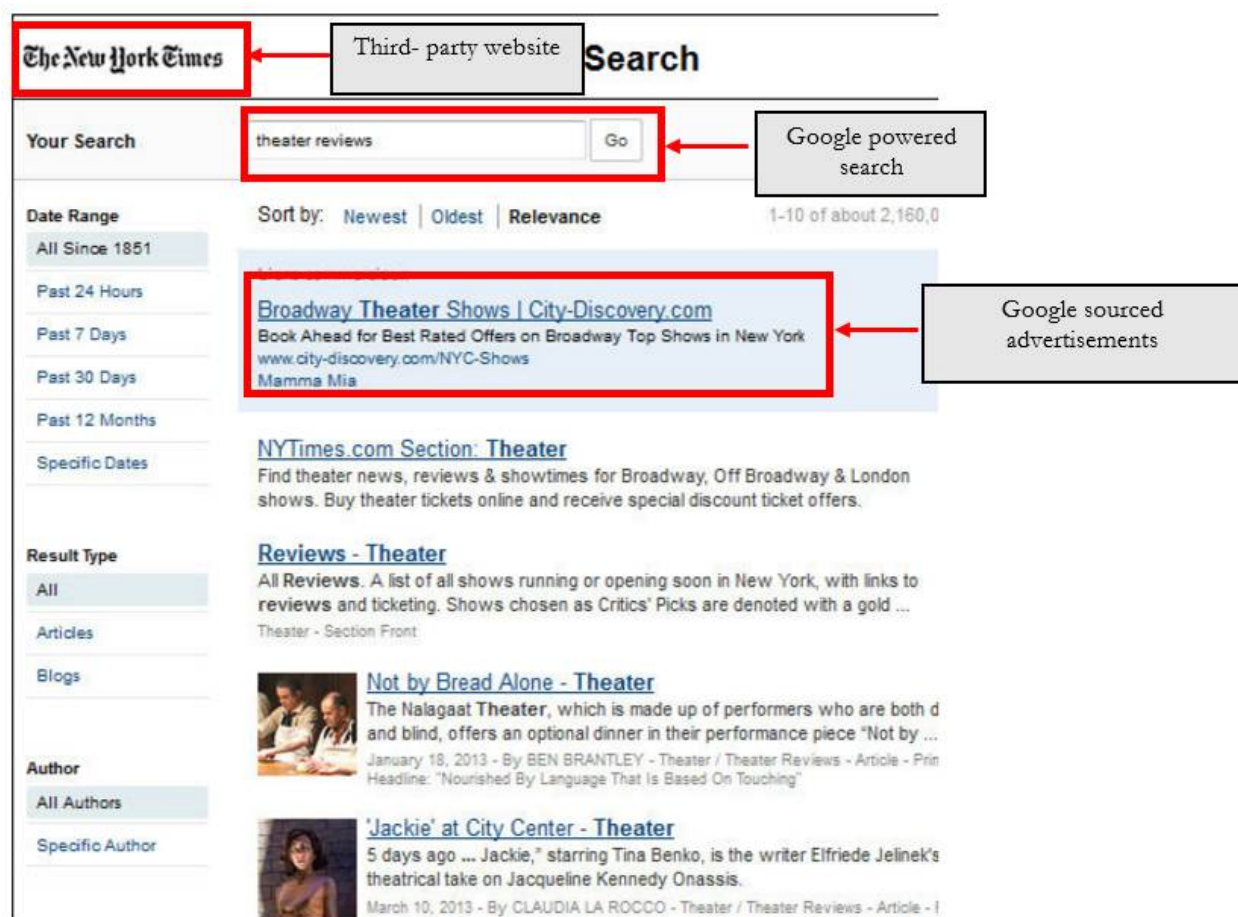
⁷⁶ ITU World Telecommunication/ICT Indicators database, 2015.

⁷⁷ Susannah Fox *Search Engines* (<http://www.pewInternet.org/2002/07/03/search-engines/>) retrieved February 1, 2016.

(i) Syndication

86. Google used syndication agreements with third-party web sites to build search scale. Syndication arrangements allow websites, like the NYTimes.com, to use Google's search platform technology to deploy search services and to use Google's ad network to deliver paid search advertisements along with those searches. Searches originate and results appear on the third-party website, but the results are sourced through Google's search technology.⁷⁸ Google's arrangement with the New York Times website (NYTimes.com) is an example of a syndication arrangement. As I show in Figure 11, the Times website includes a search box and search advertising, all provided by Google's search advertising platform.

Figure 11: Example of a Google Search Syndication Deal (New York Times)⁷⁹



⁷⁸ Bertrand Bathelot, *What is Search Syndication Definition?*, The Digital Marketing Glossary (Mar. 16, 2013), <http://digitalmarketing-glossary.com/What-is-Search-syndication-definition>.

⁷⁹ Bertrand Bathelot, *What is Search Syndication Definition?*, The Digital Marketing Glossary (Mar. 16, 2013), <http://digitalmarketing-glossary.com/What-is-Search-syndication-definition>.

Syndication arrangements provide two benefits to Google. First, Google runs ads on syndicated search partners, increasing revenue and money from searches on third-party websites.⁸⁰ As a second effect, a larger volume of traffic allows Google to improve its search results, improving the effectiveness of its search and ad products searches.⁸¹

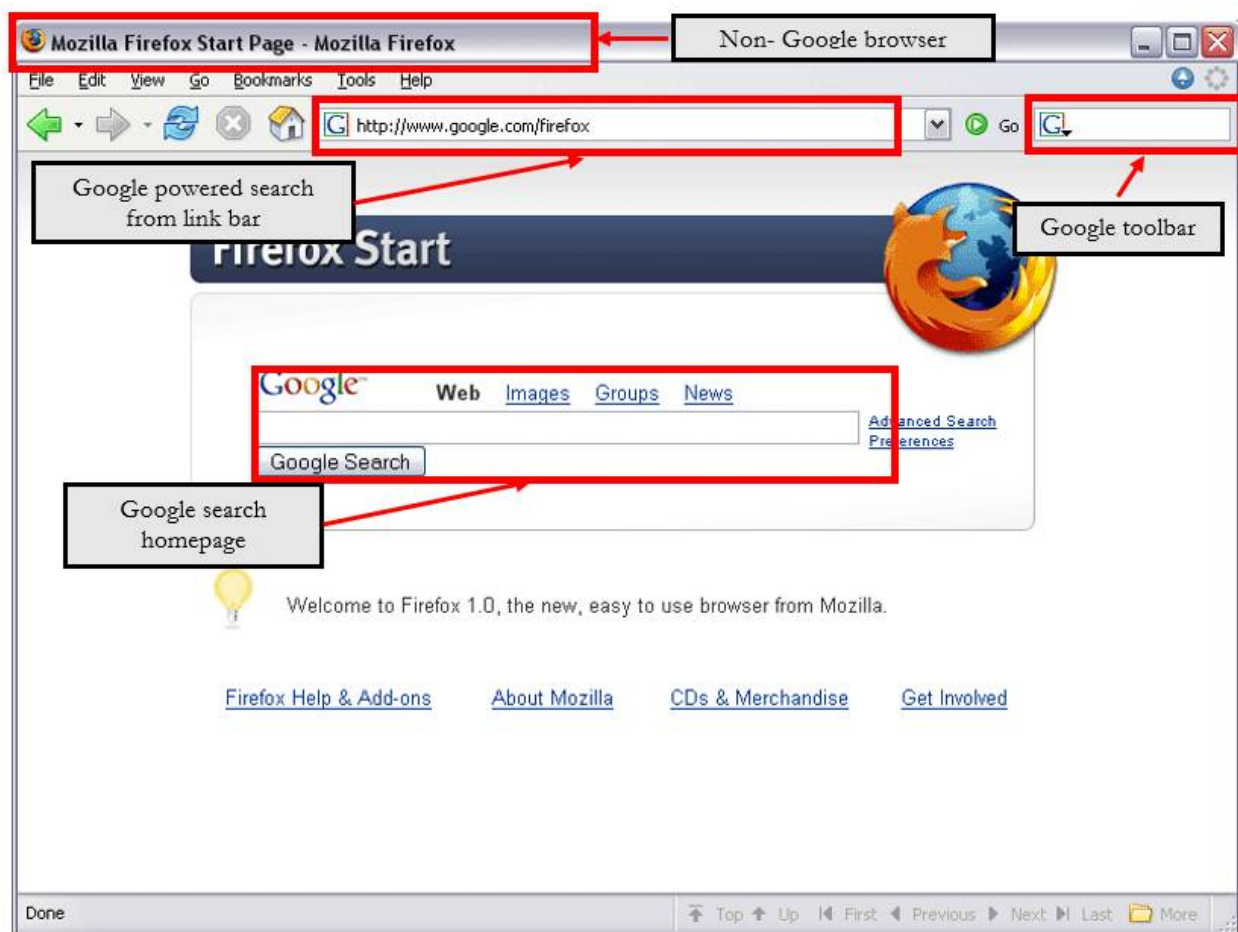
(ii) Distribution

87. Distribution is an arrangement in which the partner agrees to make Google the entry point to performing searches or other services – for example toolbars, search bars in a web browser, auto-search, widgets, and/or a default homepage. When a user enters a query on a search distribution partner's technology, the results are displayed on a Google results page. Alternatively, distribution can take the form of partnerships with PC OEMs, PC retailers, software vendors, and telecom providers who agree to pre-install toolbars or establish default settings that direct users' queries to Google.⁸² Google's partnership with the Firefox browser is an example of a distribution arrangement. As I show in Figure 12 below, the Firefox browser provides multiple search entry points, all powered by Google search.

⁸⁰ "We serve AdWords ads on Google properties, our syndicated search partners web sites" Google 2007 10-K page 8.

⁸¹ Deposition of Urs Hoelzle, Nov. 24, 2015, page 301-02.

⁸² Loren Baker, *Google Chrome Default Browser Coming to Dell Computers?*, Search Engine Journal (Sept. 8, 2009), <http://www.searchenginejournal.com/google-chrome-dell-sony/13055/>.

Figure 12: Example of a Google Distribution Arrangement (Firefox Browser)⁸³

These distribution agreements were highly effective in directing traffic to Google because users typically do not change the default settings.⁸⁴ Put differently, if a laptop comes with Google set to the default search engine, the user is likely to use Google's search.⁸⁵ Distribution agreements, like syndication agreements, provide Google two-fold benefit: increased volume of search queries, and direct revenue from ads served alongside query results.

88. Table 3 below shows several examples of early Google distribution partnerships which contributed to its scale.

⁸³ Tim Hatch, *Mozilla Firefox Start Page*, Tim Hatch (Nov. 11, 2004), <http://timhatch.com/ark/2004/11/11/mozilla-firefox-start-page>.

⁸⁴ Deposition of Urs Hoelzle, Nov. 24, 2015, page 300-301.

⁸⁵ Deposition of Urs Hoelzle, Nov. 24, 2015, page 300-301.

Table 3: Selected Google Distribution and Syndication Deals

Partner	Type	Date	Terms	Importance
Yahoo! ⁸⁶	Syndication	Jun. 2000	3.7m Google shares ⁸⁷	Google traffic doubled on first day of partnership ⁸⁸
AOL ⁸⁹	Syndication	May 2002	Unknown	Competitors Inktomi and Overture lost 25 to 35 percentage points of share in one week ⁹⁰
ASK ⁹¹	Syndication	Jul. 2002	Share of \$100m revenue over 3 years	Extended Google user base to millions of users on Ask
Apple ⁹²	Distribution (Safari default)	Jan. 2003	~ \$1b p.a. (\$3.20 per iOS device)	Google rapidly increased reach; Safari was downloaded over a million times in just the first two weeks of the new browser's launch. ⁹³
Mozilla ⁹⁴	Distribution (browser default)	Feb. 2004	~ \$300m p.a.	Google was default on 2 of 3 major U.S. browsers (excluding Internet Explorer)
Dell ⁹⁵	Distribution (toolbar, homepage, desktop search)	May. 2006	~ \$1b over 3 years	Dell had 30.9% of U.S. PC OEM share as of 2008 ⁹⁶

⁸⁶ *Yahoo! Selects Google as its Default Search Engine Provider*, Google Press, <http://googlepress.blogspot.com/2000/06/yahoo-selects-google-as-its-default.html>.

⁸⁷ At Google's 2004 IPO price of \$85, this is approximately \$315 million.

⁸⁸ Ken Auletta, *Googled: The End of the World as We Know It* (2009).

⁸⁹ Renewed in 2005. Google paid \$1 billion for a 5% share in AOL for this partnership. Saul Hansell, *AOL's Choice of Google Leaves Microsoft as the Outsider*, New York Times (Dec. 19, 2006), http://www.nytimes.com/2005/12/19/business/media/aols-choice-of-google-leaves-microsoft-as-the-outsider.html?_r=0.

⁹⁰ David Teather, *How Google Got It So Right*, The Guardian (May 6, 2002), <http://www.theguardian.com/media/2002/may/06/mondaymediasection.comment1>.

⁹¹ Ask Jeeves and Google Sign \$100 Million Three-Year Deals, News from Google (July 18, 2002), <http://googlepress.blogspot.com/2002/07/ask-jeeves-and-google-sign-100-million.html>.

⁹² Greg Sterling, *Financial Analyst Affirms Google's \$1 Billion in "Default Search" Payments to Apple*, Search Engine Land (Feb. 11, 2013), <http://searchengineland.com/financial-analyst-affirms-googles-1-billion-in-default-search-payments-to-apple-148255>.

⁹³ Greg Sterling, *Financial Analyst Affirms Google's \$1 Billion in "Default Search" Payments to Apple*, Search Engine Land (Feb. 11, 2013), <http://searchengineland.com/financial-analyst-affirms-googles-1-billion-in-default-search-payments-to-apple-148255>.

⁹⁴ Charles Arthur, *As Firefox Dumps Google for Yahoo, is the Clock Ticking for Mozilla?*, The Guardian (Nov. 20, 2014), <http://www.theguardian.com/technology/2014/nov/20/firefox-google-yahoo-mozilla>.

⁹⁵ Chris Krauter, *Google, Dell Reach Deal, Says Report*, Forbes (May 25, 2006), <http://www.forbes.com/2006/05/25/google-dell-0525markets15.html>. Additionally, the distribution partnerships often make it difficult for consumers to remove the defaults. See e.g., David Ulevitch, *Google Turns the Page, in a Bad Way*, OpenDNS Blog (May 22, 2007), <https://blog.opendns.com/2007/05/22/google-turns-the-page> (discussing

Partner	Type	Date	Terms	Importance
Real Networks ⁹⁷	Distribution (toolbar)	Aug. 2006	Unknown	Also bundled Mozilla browser, increasing Google's reach through both toolbar and default search
Packard Bell ⁹⁸	Distribution	Dec. 2006	Unknown	Google PC search, Google Earth, Picasa, and Google search toolbar for Firefox and Internet Explorer all preinstalled on Packard Bell computers

89. These syndication and distribution agreements helped Google win the search engine race to dominance. By 2007, Google's search technology was directly or indirectly powering 4,033,277,000 worldwide user queries. The market share these queries represented for Google in 2007 is shown below in Figure 13.⁹⁹

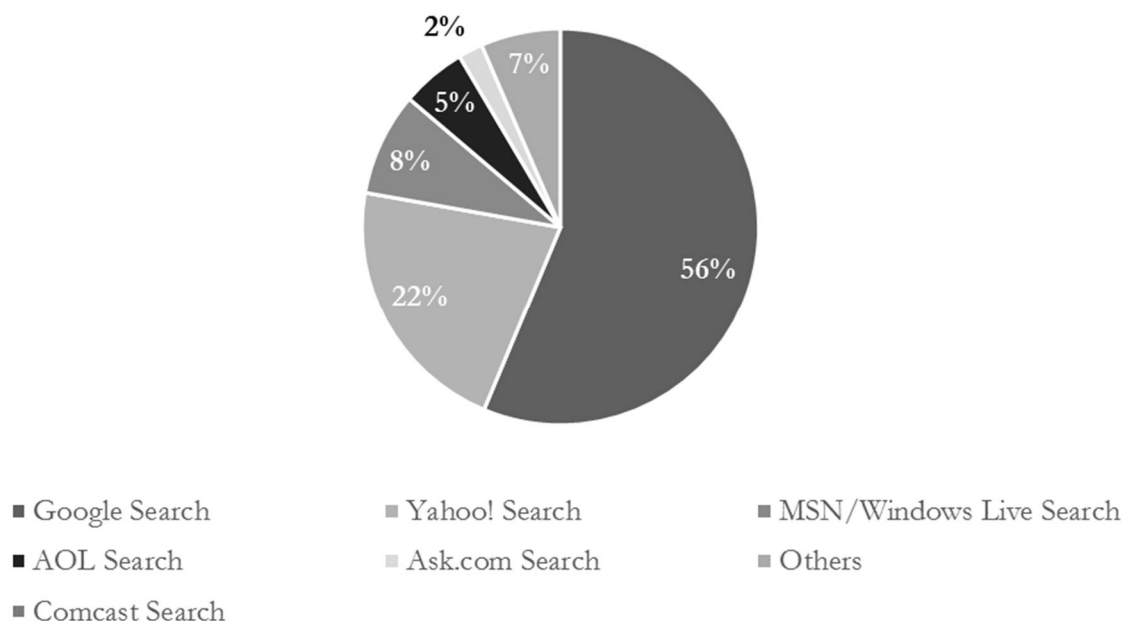
the difficulty of removing preinstalled Google software from Dell laptops, even when the software may be interfering with the end users' search experiences).

⁹⁶ Danny Sullivan, *Microsoft Wins Deal for Live Search to be Default on HP Computers*, Search Engine Land (June 2, 2008), <http://searchengineland.com/microsoft-wins-deal-for-live-search-to-be-default-on-hp-computers-14117>.

⁹⁷ Jennifer LeClaire, *Google, Mozilla, RealNetworks Seal Software Bundling Deal*, TechNewsWorld (Aug. 3, 2006), <http://www.technewsworld.com/story/52202.html>.

⁹⁸ *Packard Bell Pre-Installs Google in its PC*, Tech Radar (Dec. 4, 2006), <http://www.techradar.com/us/news/software/applications/Internet/web/packard-bell-pre-installs-google-in-its-pcs-140523>.

⁹⁹ *Nielsen//NetRatings MegaView Search*, (June 2007), http://www.nielsen-online.com/pr/pr_070620.pdf.

Figure 13: Google's Global Search Share (2007)¹⁰⁰

As I show in Figure 13, Google's search market share in 2007 was 56%, with its nearest competitor, AOL Search, at 22%.

90. Google's scale in user search queries also translated to a majority share of worldwide internet advertising revenue. By 2007, Google had one million advertisers using its ad serving platforms.¹⁰¹ The syndication and distribution agreements through which Google gained scale were a significant but necessary cost, as Google repeatedly discussed in its public security filings.¹⁰² These agreements also helped Google reach users in the mobile space, which was a concern of theirs. In 2005, Google stated a risk to their business was being "unable to attract and retain a substantial number of alternative device users to our web search services or if we are slow to develop products and technologies that are more compatible with non-PC communications devices, we will fail to capture a significant share of an increasingly important portion of the market for online services."¹⁰³ Google also faced competitive

¹⁰⁰ Nielsen//NetRatings *MegaView Search*, June 2007.

¹⁰¹ <http://bits.blogs.nytimes.com/2009/01/08/google-1-million-advertisers-in-2007-more-now/>

¹⁰² Google Form 10-K, 2007, pg. 19 ("Our operating margin will also experience downward pressure if a greater percentage of our revenues comes from ads placed on our Google Network members' sites compared to revenues generated through ads placed on our own sites or if we spend a proportionately larger amount to promote the distribution of certain products, including Google Toolbar.").

¹⁰³ Google 10K 2005, p. 32.

pressures and was concerned that competitors “[could] use their experience and resources against us in a variety of competitive ways, including by making acquisitions, investing more aggressively in research and development and competing more aggressively for advertisers and web sites... we could experience a significant decline in user traffic. Any such decline in traffic could negatively affect our revenues.”¹⁰⁴ Examining these costs over time provides insight into Google’s economic motivations to shift the balance of power in their partner relationships. Google records payments to syndication and distribution partners in its financial statements as “Traffic Acquisition Cost” or “TAC.” Table 4 below shows Google’s TAC, as reported in its Annual Reports, from 2005 to 2014.

Table 4: Google Total Traffic Acquisition Costs (in Millions) (2008-2014)¹⁰⁵

	2008	2009	2010	2011	2012	2013	2014
TAC related to AdSense arrangements	\$5,284	\$5,265	\$6,162	\$7,294	\$8,791	\$9,293	\$9,864
TAC related to distribution arrangements	\$655	\$904	\$1,155	\$1,517	\$2,165	\$2,965	\$3,633
Total TAC	\$5,939	\$6,169	\$7,317	\$8,811	\$10,956	\$12,258	\$13,497

As Table 4 clearly demonstrates, TAC is a very material expense for Google, representing 23% of revenue and roughly 1/3 of Google’s total costs and expenses in 2014. These Google TAC trends are particularly important to my discussion of the commerciality of Google’s mobile’s strategy in Section VIII.

b) Building of platform control

91. In addition to building scale through partnerships, throughout the early 2000s Google continued to build consumer products that created more opportunities to capture user attention and queries. Table 5 below lists a number of Google products that were released from 2001 to 2006.

Table 5: Google’s Product Releases (2001-2006)¹⁰⁶

Product	Timeframe	Description
Google Groups	Feb-01	Google Groups is a free of charge service that connects groups of people to information and people that interest them. Users can discuss topics by posting messages to a group, where other people can then read and respond.

¹⁰⁴ Google 10K 2005, p. 20.

¹⁰⁵ Google 10K 2008 p. 45; Google 10K 2011 p. 31; Google 10K 2014 p. 27.

¹⁰⁶ Google 10K (2004-2006)

Product	Timeframe	Description
Google Images	Jul-01	Google Image Search is a searchable index of images found across the web.
Froogle	Dec-02	Froogle is a search engine for finding products for sale online
Blogger	Feb-03	Blogger is a web-based publishing tool that lets people publish to the web instantly using weblogs, or "blogs."
Google Alerts	Aug-03	Google Alerts are email updates of the latest relevant Google results based on the user's choice of query or topic. Typical uses include monitoring a developing news story, keeping current on a competitor or industry, getting the latest on a celebrity or event, or keeping tabs on a favorite sports team. Google Alerts is now available in eight languages.
Orkut	Jan-04	Orkut enables users to search and connect to other users through networks of trusted friends. Users can create join or manage online communities, personal mailboxes, photos, and a profile.
Gmail	Apr-04	Gmail is Google's free webmail service that comes with built-in Google search technology for searching emails. In addition, Google integrated its instant messaging product into the email experience. Google serves small text ads that are relevant to messages in Gmail instead of pop-ups or untargeted banner ads.
Picasa and Picasa Web Albums	Jul-04	Picasa is a downloadable client application that helps users find, edit and share all the pictures on their computers. It streamlines the digital photography experience, allowing pictures to be transferred from digital cameras, organized, manipulated, and shared over email. Picasa's "hello" service also lets users share pictures with others and chat about them in real-time, or post them to blogs. Picasa integrates with other Google services—including Gmail, Blogger, and Froogle—and is available in 38 languages on 133 domains.
Google Books	Oct-04	Google Book Search lets users search the full text of a library-sized collection of books to discover books of interest and learn where to buy or borrow them.
Google Desktop	Oct-04	Desktop lets people perform a full-text search on the contents of their own computer, including email, files, instant messenger chats and web browser history. Users can view web pages they have visited even when they are not online. Google Desktop also includes a customizable Sidebar that include modules for weather, stock tickers, and news.
Google Scholar	Nov-04	Google Scholar provides a simple way to do a broad search for relevant scholarly literature including peer-reviewed papers, theses, books, abstracts, and articles.
Google Video	Jan-05	Google video and YouTube let users find, upload, view and share video content worldwide
Google Maps	Feb-05	Google Maps helps people navigate map information. Users can look up addresses, search for businesses, and get point-to-point driving directions—all plotted on an interactive street map or on satellite imagery. Google Maps provides a comprehensive search experience by combining yellow-pages listings with ratings and reviews and other business information. Google displays relevant targeted ads for searches done through Google Maps.
Personalized Homepage and Search	May-05	Personalized homepage gives our users a way to add information to a customized Google homepage. Personalized homepages bring together content from across the web and other Google properties, such as Gmail and Google News.

Product	Timeframe	Description
Google Earth	Jun-05	Google Earth lets users search for and browse geospatial content from community storytelling, 3D buildings, location-referenced photos and historic maps to Wikipedia articles, United Nations and European Space Agency content, and even photos and stories from <i>National Geographic</i> and videos from Discovery Networks.
Google Sketchup and Sketchup Pro	Jun-05	Google Sketchup is a free 3D modeling tool for modeling 3D buildings and can be used as a tool for populating Google Earth with architectural content. The Pro version of this tool is sold to professional designers and includes additional features.
Google News	Jan-06	Google News gathers information from thousands of news sources worldwide and presents news stories in searchable format within minutes of their publication on the web.
Google Finance	Mar-06	Google Finance provides a simple user interface to navigate complex financial information in an intuitive manner, including linking together different data sources, such as correlating stock price movements to news events.
Google Calendar	Apr-06	Google Calendar is a free online sharable calendar service that allows users to keep track of the events, appointments and special occasions in their lives and share this information with anyone they choose. In addition, websites and groups with an online presence can use Google Calendar to create public calendars, which are automatically indexed and searchable on Google. Google Calendar uses open calendar standards so the product co-operates with other calendar applications and devices.
Google Docs and Spreadsheets	Jun-06	Google Docs & Spreadsheets allows users to create, view and edit documents and spreadsheets from anywhere using a browser.
Google Checkout	Jun-06	Google Checkout enables users to shop across the web with their Google login.

The Google products described above provided benefits of scale similar to those stemming from syndication and distribution agreements. Specifically, the more time users spent on Google-owned properties, the more opportunities Google had to both gather data from those users' queries and other online behaviors, which it might use to refine and advance its ad targeting offerings. More time on Google-owned properties also provides more opportunities to serve advertising to its users and such advertising is more valuable to Google because it does not have to share the revenue with another site owner.

92. Google-owned products provide important control advantages. As described above, the ability to make key strategic decisions about pricing and compatibility is advantageous, particularly in a platform market. Furthermore, reliance on a competitor for an essential input is not an economically desirable position in any industry. In Google's case, user traffic is critically important because of its revenue model. Thus Google took steps to reduce the risk of losing traffic. For example, a syndication partner like

NYTimes.com might decide to cancel its agreement with Google, which would mean that Google would no longer get the data or ad revenue from searches on NYTimes.com. By contrast, Google-owned site traffic is completely within its own control to be monitored, monetized and protected in furtherance of its own long-term financial and strategic interests.

93. To that end, by May of 2007, Google had achieved a great deal of control over its web traffic, as Google.com became the world's most-visited website.¹⁰⁷ In an interview with USA Today, Eric Schmidt (at the time CEO of Google) discussed the Google playbook in a prescient and revealing summary of its business methods and objectives.

[Interviewer:] What's your take on why Google keeps growing, while your competitors have such a hard time catching up?

[Eric Schmidt]: We've had a very clear strategy, a very stable management team and our business approach hasn't changed very much, it's just expanded.

We're playing the same game we played last year and the year before and the year before. The organization and strategy is stable, and you have the tremendous adoption of the Internet and online advertising. We've been able to run that cycle perfectly, or as perfectly as we can.

We get more users, and that gets us more advertisers.

More advertisers give us more cash, more cash gets us more data centers, more data centers mean we can get engineers who want to build even bigger data centers, and do more amazing computer science. Those engineers bring in their friends to build more amazing ad systems, and also work on great search.

That cycle is very real at Google.¹⁰⁸

As Google's Eric Schmidt's comments suggest, Google in 2007 had executed a playbook that resulted in a strongly positive feedback cycle where users led to advertising revenue, and advertising revenue lead to increased ability to invest and control the ecosystem.

¹⁰⁷ "Schmidt says he didn't grasp the power of Google at first," USA Today, May 16, 2007 (http://usatoday30.usatoday.com/money/industries/technology/2007-05-15-google-schmidt-qa_N.htm) accessed 1/20/2016.

¹⁰⁸ "Schmidt says he didn't grasp the power of Google at first," USA Today, May 16, 2007 (http://usatoday30.usatoday.com/money/industries/technology/2007-05-15-google-schmidt-qa_N.htm) accessed 1/20/2016.

94. By 2007, Google had achieved a formidable position of scale that the industry viewed as unstoppable. However, during the same period, Google was keenly aware of a looming threat to its ever-important user base - the emergence of mobile devices as an alternate means of accessing the internet.

D. The mobile ecosystem

95. This matter revolves around the technology shift to mobile devices that Sun and Google both experienced. The emergence of the Internet and its attendant economy was largely based on consumer usage of PCs.¹⁰⁹ In the mid-2000s, however, new telecommunication technologies and processing power began a new era, in which mobile computing would become an acceptable and ultimately preferred means of consumer and enterprise Internet access.¹¹⁰

96. In this section, I describe the key constituencies in the mobile ecosystem and the role of mobile platforms like the ones at the center of this matter. Second, I explain the key industry trends – emergence and rise of mobile, device evolution, and a shifting of dynamics among key ecosystem players. Finally, I describe the market position of Java during this paradigm shift.

1) Competitive landscape

97. The rise of mobile phones brought considerable opportunity and risk to the established leaders in the PC-based Internet economy. An emerging mobile ecosystem included the same players from the PC era – web sites and advertisers, but also introduced a new set of players to the competitive landscape. Today, we think of the mobile ecosystem as consisting of the following major groups of stakeholders: OEMs, mobile application platform providers¹¹¹, wireless carriers, and application developers. In this section, I describe these key industry participants, and explain the role of mobile application platforms in facilitating and helping control value creation.

a) Industry participants

98. A mobile applications platform is software that runs on a physical handset to run applications written for that platform (which I occasionally shorthand to “mobile platform”). Examples of mobile

¹⁰⁹ Barry Leiner, et. al., *Brief History of the Internet, Internet Society*, <http://www.internetsociety.org/internet/what-internet/history-internet/brief-history-internet> (Last accessed Feb. 7, 2016).

¹¹⁰ Sarah Perez, *Majority of Digital Media Consumption Now Takes Place in Digital Apps*, TechCrunch (Aug. 21, 2014), <http://techcrunch.com/2014/08/21/majority-of-digital-media-consumption-now-takes-place-in-mobile-apps/>.

¹¹¹ A mobile OS is typically part of mobile applications platform and a mobile applications platform is sometimes referred to colloquially as simply an OS. Mobile applications platforms also includes other platforms in specialized runtime environments.

applications platforms are: Sun's (now Oracle's) Java platform (discussed further below), Symbian OS, RIM's Blackberry, Google's Android, Apple's iOS, and Microsoft's Windows Mobile.¹¹²

99. OEMs produce the physical handset devices. Well-known mobile OEMs include Samsung, Motorola, HTC, Nokia, RIM, Huawei, Apple and Microsoft.¹¹³ The devices that OEMs create (e.g., Galaxy S6, iPhone, Windows Phone) are not functional without contributions from other players in the mobile ecosystem.¹¹⁴ OEMs may rely on other parties to provide the software stack that their devices run on as well as content (games, news, other apps) that users desire. OEM's all rely on wireless carriers to provide the networks that connect mobile devices - often the wireless carrier also sells the mobile phones to users.

100. Wireless carriers are the companies that supply the networks that mobile devices connect to in order to perform the most basic functions such as placing and receiving phone calls and messages (e.g. Verizon, AT&T). Mobile carriers are one channel through which users can buy phones and other mobile devices. Carriers also may have their own "media centers" that allow users to download apps such as games and ringtones. For example, Verizon Wireless opened its "Mobile Web Games and AppStore" (also called "Get it Now") in April 2009.¹¹⁵ This allowed Verizon Wireless customers to download apps and games directly to their mobile device.

101. Apps are created by developers and are then distributed to users (free or for a price) on different app marketplaces for different mobile applications platforms. Some marketplaces charge an annual fee for developers, others do not (Apple charges developers \$99 per year, Android charges a onetime fee of \$25).¹¹⁶ The marketplace provider generally takes a portion of the profits generated on its platform. Free apps are still able to generate revenues through in-app purchases and advertising. Apple, for example,

¹¹² *Mobile/Tablet Operating System Market Share*, NetMarketShare (Jan. 2016), <https://www.netmarketshare.com/operating-system-market-share.aspx?qprid=8&qpcustomd=1>.

¹¹³ *All Phone Manufacturers*, Phone Arena, <http://www.phonearena.com/phones/manufacturers> (last visited February 5, 2016).

¹¹⁴ This is known in economics as perfect complements. Perfect complements describe two goods which must be used together, for example a physical phone is not usable without an operating system to interface between the user and the machine. *See, e.g.*, Hal R. Varian, *Intermediate Microeconomics* (W. W. Norton & Company, 4th ed. 1996).

¹¹⁵ Verizon Wireless, <http://www.verizonwireless.com/news/article/2009/04/pr2009-04-01k.html> (last visited December 21, 2015).

¹¹⁶ Tim Mackenzie, *App store fees, percentages, and payouts: What developers need to know*, TechRepublic (May 7, 2012) <http://www.techrepublic.com/blog/software-engineer/app-store-fees-percentages-and-payouts-what-developers-need-to-know>.

takes 30% of revenues from apps sold in its market, leaving the developer with the remaining 70%.¹¹⁷ Although these app stores take a cut of the developers' profits, they have provided developers with a market and a pool of customers that they would not have had access to.

b) Mobile applications platforms

102. Of particular interest in this case is the role of the mobile applications platform which brings together different participants in the ecosystem.

103. The value of the mobile applications platform increases as the number of users increases – specifically the value to app developers, advertisers, OEMS, and carriers. The value of the platform also increases as more developers choose to create apps for a mobile applications platform. Users enjoy more choice, and advertisers enjoy more potential impressions.¹¹⁸ Availability of apps has been shown to be a key driver of user selection of a mobile device.¹¹⁹

104. Mobile applications platform providers have mobile advertising networks (similar to the search and display advertising networks described above). Advertisers pay to have ads appear on mobile devices in a variety of places. For example, ads displayed alongside search results, or ads displayed within a mobile app. As in PC online advertising, mobile advertisers prefer a large and active user base.

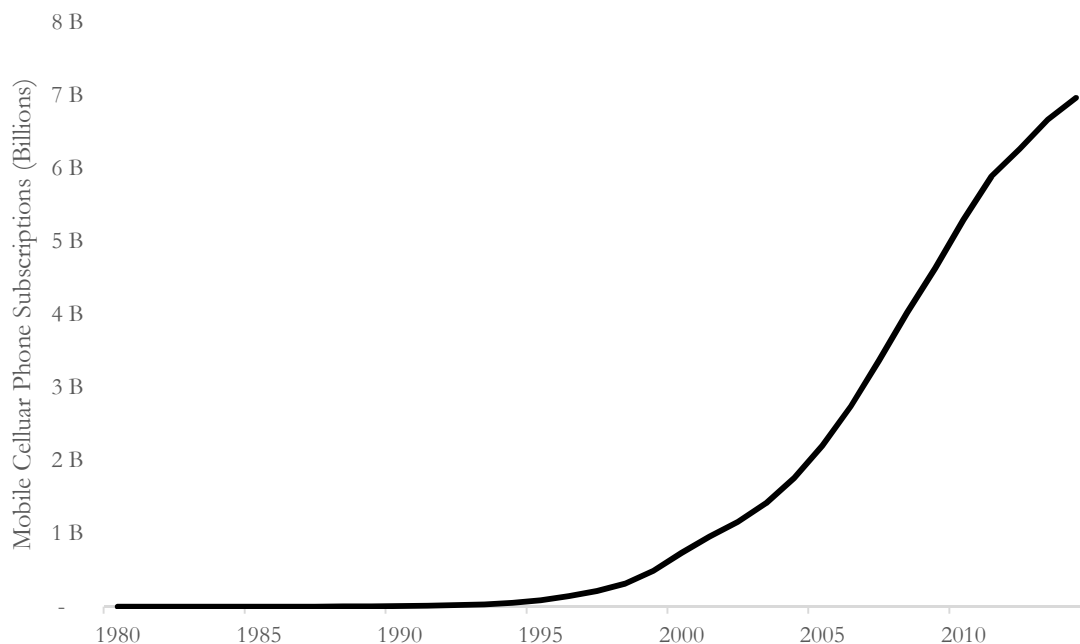
2) Growth of mobile industry

105. Beginning in the mid-1990s, cell phone technology emerged, and people started using mobile devices. Figure 14 shows the number of worldwide mobile cellular subscriptions.

¹¹⁷ Tim Mackenzie, *App store fees, percentages, and payouts: What developers need to know*, TechRepublic (May 7, 2012) <http://www.techrepublic.com/blog/software-engineer/app-store-fees-percentages-and-payouts-what-developers-need-to-know>.

¹¹⁸ Deposition of William S. Rutledge III, Dec. 9 2015, 76:15-21 (“Q: Do you know why you had an objective to increase the volume of applications in the Android market? A: My understanding of why we would want to increase the volume of apps in the Android market is to increase the market share of devices by having compelling content for those devices.”) & 112:1-10 (“A: Having apps launch on Android before iPhone has been a goal of the team, you know, a secondary goal of the team for quite some time now, and it’s really around driving consumer market share. So if you have compelling content that consumers enjoy on one platform versus another, then it leads to more device sales. And so finding compelling content that we could launch first by helping to build the apps faster, it helps improve our position in the ecosystem.”); GOOG-00143067 (“Don’t forget this is a chicken and egg game. Developers need to see volume shipments before they write apps. Apple introduced app store a year *after* they shipped devices, and thus they had momentum and volume that enticed developers. We had a problem. We launched app store without volume shipments developers could count on. . . . How do we grow the apps faster?”).

¹¹⁹ This was recognized by Sun, *see e.g.*, OAGOOGL0005087637 at 641, 677.

Figure 14: Worldwide Mobile Cellular Subscriptions (1980-2014)¹²⁰

The growth in mobile phone usage depicted in Figure 14 led to the rapid development and evolution of mobile phone devices.

a) Mobile phone evolution

106. In these early days of mobile, the types of mobile phone available to users had different form factors and resources from those available today. While in 2016 it may be tempting to think of phones with various capabilities in strict categories like “feature phone” or “smartphone,” mobile phones actually have developed on a continuum of both technical functionality and form factor.

107. Figure 15 below illustrates in pictures how mobile phone form factors changed from 2003 to 2011.

¹²⁰ Mobile cellular subscriptions. World Bank. <http://data.worldbank.org/indicator/IT.CEL.SETS>.

Figure 15: Continuum of Mobile Evolution¹²¹

108. I proceed to describe examples of mobile phones that represent key steps in this mobile phone evolution. These examples of early, highly capable phones show that mobile phone features and functionality have been evolving for a long time, and the evolution of devices is a true continuum.

109. The IBM Simon, released in 1994 illustrates the fact that phones that could do more than make calls have been around for decades.¹²² The Simon featured a touch screen operated by a stylus and offered apps such as an address book, calculator, calendar, email, fax, note pad, and sketch pad.¹²³ Figure 16 shows a picture of the IBM Simon.

Figure 16: The IBM Simon¹²⁴

¹²¹ See Exhibit 19.

¹²² Doug Aarmoth, *First Smartphone Turns 20: Fun Facts About Simon*, Time (August 18, 2014), time.com/3137005/first-smartphone-ibm-simon.

¹²³ Doug Aarmoth, *First Smartphone Turns 20: Fun Facts About Simon*, Time (August 18, 2014), time.com/3137005/first-smartphone-ibm-simon.

¹²⁴ *IBM/BellSouth Personal Communicator*, Computer History Museum, <http://www.computerhistory.org/revolution/mobile-computing/18/341/1733> (last visited February 5, 2016).

110. In 1996, Nokia launched a mobile device called the 9000 Communicator. The Communicator, pictured in Figure 17 below, also had many of the features we have come to expect in a smartphone, such as email, web access, and word processing. The 9000 Communicator combined all these features with the ability to place phone calls.¹²⁵ The Nokia 9000 Communicator was sold in the United States beginning in 1997.¹²⁶ Beginning in 2000, the Nokia Communicator 9210 was running applications on the Java platform.¹²⁷

Figure 17: The Nokia 9000 Communicator¹²⁸



111. The Java platform was also used by smartphones created by Danger, Inc. Danger, Inc. was a company created in 2000 and is most well-known for the Java-based Hiptop, also known as the Sidekick. The Sidekick was an early smartphone and was most notable for its rapid adoption in the United States. Microsoft acquired Danger, Inc. in 2008.¹²⁹

112. In 2001, RIM released its first BlackBerry handheld, a smartphone whose OS was based on Java. The next year RIM introduced its BlackBerry Development Environment for Java developers, who could make applications for BlackBerry devices.¹³⁰ BlackBerry has been a player in the smartphone industry since the beginning of smartphones and these devices gave both developers and users access to the Java

¹²⁵ Richard Baguley, *The Gadget We Miss: The Nokia 9000 Communicator*, Medium (April 1, 2013), <https://medium.com/people-gadgets/the-gadget-we-miss-the-nokia-9000-communicator-ef8e8c7047ae#.41f1er5xo>.

¹²⁶ Richard Baguley, *The Gadget We Miss: The Nokia 9000 Communicator*, Medium (April 1, 2013), <https://medium.com/people-gadgets/the-gadget-we-miss-the-nokia-9000-communicator-ef8e8c7047ae#.41f1er5xo>.

¹²⁷ Nokia 9210 Communicator, GSM Arena, http://www.gsmarena.com/nokia_9210_communicator-210.php (last visited February 2, 2016).

¹²⁸ *Nokia Communicator*, Wikipedia, https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Nokia_Communicator (last visited February 5, 2016).

¹²⁹ Erick Schonfield, *Meanwhile, Microsoft Buys Danger for \$500 Million*, TechCrunch (February 11, 2008), <http://techcrunch.com/2008/02/11/meanwhile-microsoft-buys-danger>.

¹³⁰ Blackberry, http://www.blackberry.com/select/get_the_facts/pdfs/rim/rim_history.pdf (last visited December 21, 2015).

platform. Another BlackBerry device that used Java was the Blackberry Bold Touch 9900, pictured below in Figure 18.¹³¹

Figure 18: Blackberry Bold Touch 9900¹³²



113. Mobile phone manufacturer HTC released the HTC Touch Pro in August 2008. The Touch Pro was Java-enabled and licensed the Java ME platform.¹³³ The HTC Touch Pro had a touch screen, apps, and was able to connect to the Internet.¹³⁴ Six months later in February of 2009, HTC released another phone, the HTC Dream.¹³⁵ The Dream was not Java-enabled but instead ran the Java-based Android platform which is the subject of this case.¹³⁶ Figure 19 below shows that the physical appearance of these devices was very similar.

¹³¹ Blackberry Bold Touch 9900, GSMarena, http://www.gsmarena.com/blackberry_bold_touch_9900-3116.php.

¹³² Blackberry Bold Touch 9900 Pictures, GSM Arena, http://www.gsmarena.com/blackberry_bold_touch_9900-pictures-3116.php (last visited February 5, 2016).

¹³³ *HTC Touch Pro*, GSM Arena, http://www.gsmarena.com/htc_touch_pro-2413.php (last visited Dec. 23, 2015).

¹³⁴ See, e.g., *User Guide, HTC Touch Pro*, Sprint, http://support.sprint.com/global/pdf/user_guides/htc/touch_pro/htc_touch_pro_ug.pdf.

¹³⁵ *HTC Dream*, GSM Arena, http://www.gsmarena.com/htc_dream-2665.php (last visited Feb. 7, 2016).

¹³⁶ *HTC Dream*, GSM Arena, http://www.gsmarena.com/htc_dream-2665.php (last visited Feb. 7, 2016).

Figure 19: HTC Dream (Java-based Android) and HTC Touch Pro (Java)¹³⁷

114. Along with physical resemblance, the functionality of the two HTC phones (one Java licensed, one Android) pictured in Figure 19 above is strikingly similar. The phones were very similar sizes. Both phones had messaging (SMS, MMS and email), GPS functions, cameras, and QWERTY keyboards.¹³⁸

115. As I discuss in the next section, mobile device usage intensity, particularly with respect to the internet, increased as more powerful (less resource constrained) phones became the norm. In 2014, in the United States, the number of people accessing the internet from mobile devices was greater than from PCs.¹³⁹

¹³⁷ *HTC Dream*, GSM Arena, http://www.gsmarena.com/htc_dream-2665.php (last visited Feb. 7, 2016); *HTC Touch Pro*, GSM Arena, http://www.gsmarena.com/htc_touch_pro-2413.php (last visited February 5, 2016); Mark Wilson, *T-Mobile G1: Full Details of the HTC Dream Android Phone*, Gizmodo (Sep. 23, 2008), <http://gizmodo.com/5053264/t-mobile-g1-full-details-of-the-htc-dream-android-phone>

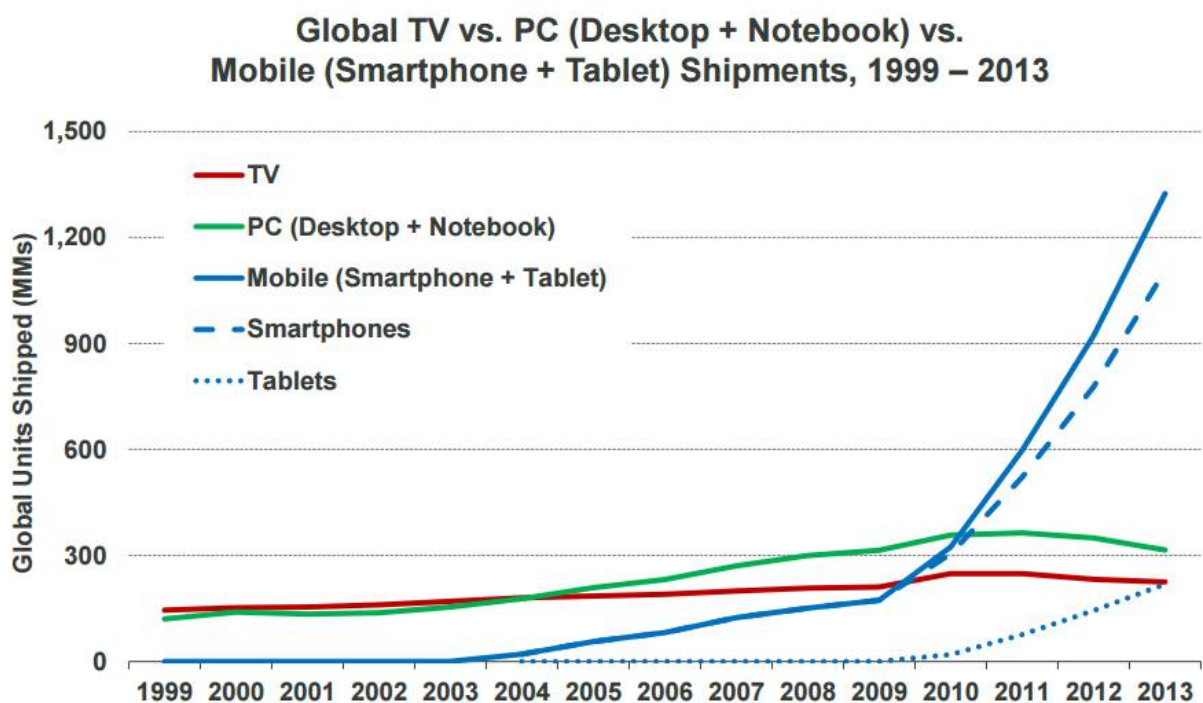
¹³⁸ *HTC Touch Pro*, GSM Arena, http://www.gsmarena.com/htc_touch_pro-2413.php (last visited February 5, 2016); Mark Wilson, *T-Mobile G1: Full Details of the HTC Dream Android Phone*, Gizmodo (Sep. 23, 2008), <http://gizmodo.com/5053264/t-mobile-g1-full-details-of-the-htc-dream-android-phone>.

¹³⁹ Steven Kovach, *More People are using just their phones to access the Internet than desktops*, Business Insider (Apr 30, 2015), <http://www.businessinsider.com/mobile-Internet-users-pass-desktop-users-2015-4>.

b) Mobile usage

116. In the mid-2000s, mobile devices had started to become a significant means by which users accessed the Internet. Figure 20 below is an excerpt from long-time industry analyst Mary Meeker's annual presentation on internet trends.

Figure 20: Global installed base of PC versus Mobile (billions of units)¹⁴⁰



The chart shows the emergence and significant rise in mobile devices beginning in 2003. Mobile device shipments surpassed traditional PC shipments in 2009 and have grown rapidly ever since.¹⁴¹

c) The emergence of mobile apps

117. Mobile phones enabled many of the same tasks as PCs (productivity, entertainment, games, surfing the Internet, email, etc.), and users began to substitute mobile phones for their PCs. There was an important difference, however. Where some major Internet functions on the PC run through a browser,

¹⁴⁰ Meeker, Mary. Internet Trends 2014 – Code Conference. May 28, 2014. http://kpcbweb2.s3.amazonaws.com/files/85/Internet_Trends_2014_vFINAL_-_05_28_14-_PDF.pdf?1401286773.

¹⁴¹ Industry analysts regularly use shipment data to track device performance.

mobile devices landed on applications (apps) as the better technological solution for accomplishing the same tasks (*e.g.*, maps applications).¹⁴²

118. The emergence of mobile apps has created a competitive landscape to “own” user engagement on mobile devices.¹⁴³ Firms like Facebook and Yahoo!, which began on the desktop and gained significant share on PCs, sought to translate that market success to mobile device users.¹⁴⁴ Facebook was enormously successful - Facebook now accounts for one in every five minutes of mobile internet engagement in the U.S.¹⁴⁵ In addition, in the first quarter of 2015, mobile accounted for 72% of Facebook's total ad revenue at \$3.32B, increasing from 59% in Q1 2014. Apps brought a new wave of “mobile-first” firms, where the user experience was designed for and primarily consumed on mobile devices. Firms like Twitter and Instagram are known as mobile first companies and have attained valuations in the billions.¹⁴⁶ In addition to new platforms, this app competition landscape presented a significant challenge to Google’s control of mobile users’ attention.

119. Today, Apple’s App Store and Google’s Play Store are popular and well-known app marketplaces. However, several marketplaces for Java mobile apps existed many years prior to the launch of Android.¹⁴⁷ For example, GetJar was an online app store launched in 2004.¹⁴⁸ GetJar carried apps for Java-based mobile platforms including BlackBerry and Symbian.¹⁴⁹ In 2008, RIM announced its

¹⁴² Benedict Evans, *Presentation: Mobile is Eating the World*, Ben Evans, <http://ben-evans.com/benedictevans/2015/6/19/presentation-mobile-is-eating-the-world>.

¹⁴³ Chantal Tode, *Competition is fierce among leading brands to have the best apps*, Mobile Marketer (August 6, 2012)<http://www.mobilemarketer.com/cms/news/content/13461.html>.

¹⁴⁴ Will Flanagan, *1 Out of Every 5 Minutes on a Mobile Phone is Spent on Facebook or Instagram*, ChicagoInno (Apr. 22, 2015), <http://chicago.inno.streetwise.co/2015/04/22/facebook-mobile-stat-1-of-every-5-min-is-on-facebook-instagram/>. See also, Facebook, Inc. Earnings Call Transcript Q1 2015, Sheryl Sandberg, COO of Facebook, states (“In the United States, for example, Facebook and Instagram get more than one out every five minutes spent on mobile.”).

¹⁴⁵ Will Flanagan, *1 Out of Every 5 Minutes on a Mobile Phone is Spent on Facebook or Instagram*, ChicagoInno (Apr. 22, 2015), <http://chicago.inno.streetwise.co/2015/04/22/facebook-mobile-stat-1-of-every-5-min-is-on-facebook-instagram/>.

¹⁴⁶ John Koetsier, *There are Now at Least 25 billion-dollar mobile internet companies*, VentureBeat (Sept. 3, 2014), <http://venturebeat.com/2014/09/03/there-are-now-at-least-25-billion-dollar-mobile-internet-companies/>.

¹⁴⁷ Om Malik, Updated: GetJar, an early app store maker, has been acquired, GigaOm (Feb. 11, 2014), <https://gigaom.com/2014/02/11/exclusive-getjar-an-early-app-store-maker-has-been-acquired/>.

¹⁴⁸ Om Malik, Updated: GetJar, an early app store maker, has been acquired, GigaOm (Feb. 11, 2014), <https://gigaom.com/2014/02/11/exclusive-getjar-an-early-app-store-maker-has-been-acquired/>.

¹⁴⁹ Om Malik, Updated: GetJar, an early app store maker, has been acquired, GigaOm (Feb. 11, 2014), <https://gigaom.com/2014/02/11/exclusive-getjar-an-early-app-store-maker-has-been-acquired/>.

BlackBerry App World Store.¹⁵⁰ At the time, RIM licensed Java for use in its BlackBerry devices, and the apps for the App World Store were Java-based.

120. Sun also had its own app marketplace for Java apps, the “Java Store,” which launched in beta in 2009. Figure 21 below from a Sun presentation about the launch of the Java Store shows an image of the consumer-facing website.¹⁵¹

Figure 21: Java Store (2009)¹⁵²



3) Sun's mobile presence (2000-2008)

121. As the transition to mobile computing and communication began, Java continued to evolve and achieved significant adoption in the early shift to mobile computing. Sun provided the technology backbone for mobile device applications and for the major OEMs.

a) Java in mobile phones

122. Sun was well-positioned to capture value from this paradigm shift. Figure 22 below is a slide from a 2006 Sun strategy document that describes the “phenomenal” early momentum of Java in wireless devices.

¹⁵⁰ RIM Announces BlackBerry App Store, InformationWeek (Oct. 21, 2008), <http://www.informationweek.com/mobile/mobile-devices/rim-announces-blackberry-app-store/d/d-id/1073137?>

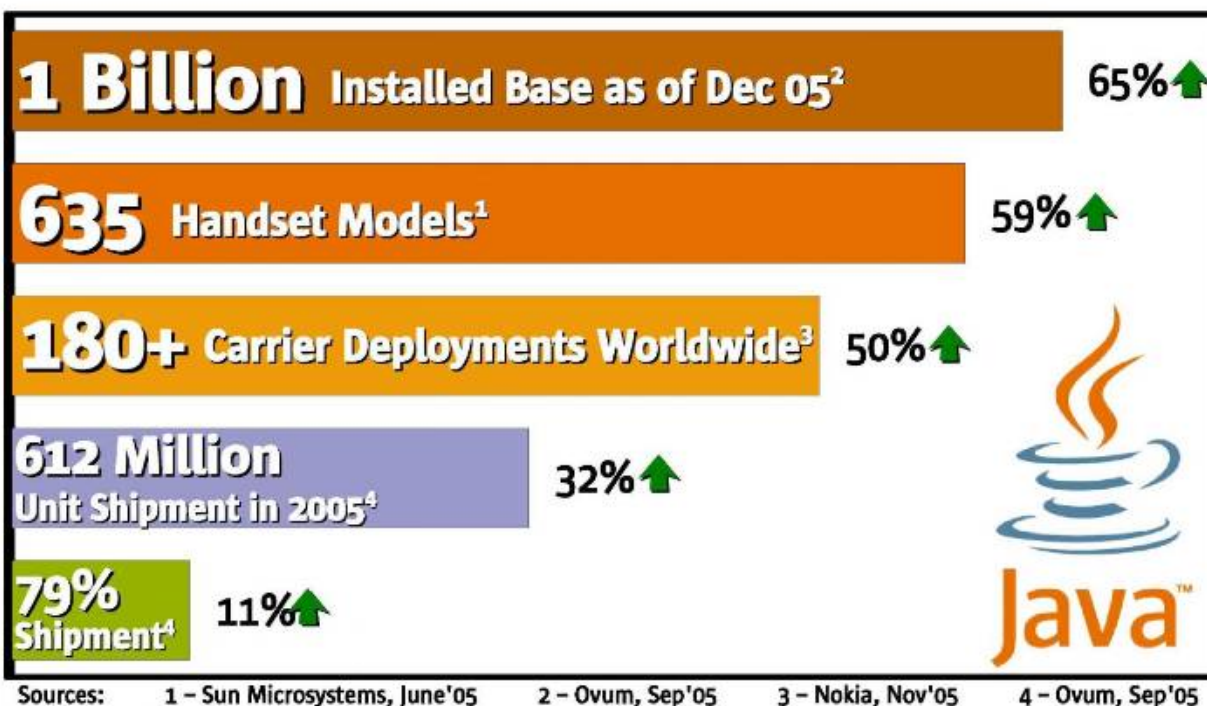
¹⁵¹ OAGOOGL0001418214, at -8220.

¹⁵² OAGOOGL0001418214, at -8220.

Figure 22: - Java ME Overview¹⁵³

Java ME in Wireless

Phenomenal Momentum in 2004 – 2005



As I discuss above, the Java ME platform referenced in Figure 22 above was Sun's first Java version designed specifically for use in mobile phones and devices.¹⁵⁴

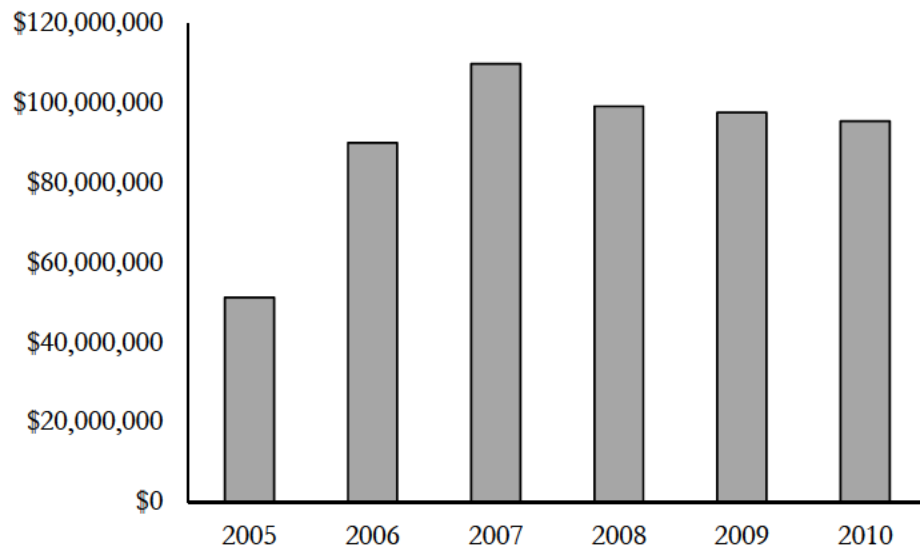
123. By 2007, Java-based phone adoption had grown to 85% of all phones shipped at the time.¹⁵⁵ Sun successfully monetized this widespread adoption by licensing the Java platform to OEMs and carriers, generating significant revenue. .

124. **Figure 23** below shows licensing revenue from below shows licensing revenue from Java ME from 2005 to 2010.

¹⁵³ GOOGLE-01-000181141, p. 2.

¹⁵⁴ Oracle Java for Mobile and Embedded Devices, <http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/java/embedded/javame/java-mobile/overview/index.html>.

¹⁵⁵ OAGOOGL0004260166, at 168.

Figure 23: Java ME Licensing Revenue (2005 to 2010)¹⁵⁶

125. Top mobile OEMs such as Samsung, RIM, HTC, Sony, LG, Nokia and others all used Java in their mobile devices.¹⁵⁷ The Java platform played a significant role in many of the early mobile devices.

126. Another significant early licensee of the Java platform for mobile phones was Symbian.¹⁵⁸ Symbian Ltd. was a company that was created as a joint venture between several large phone manufacturers including Nokia, Ericsson and Motorola in 1998.¹⁵⁹ Symbian created a mobile operating system which was based on the Java platform and licensed the software to OEMs, including the joint venture partners. By 2006 Java-based Symbian had 70% market share among phone shipments. Nokia, Sony Ericsson, Motorola, Samsung and LG were all producing phones using the Java-based Symbian OS.¹⁶⁰

127. As seen in Figure 24 Java-enabled phones increased from 120 million devices in 2003 to 2.6 billion in 2008.

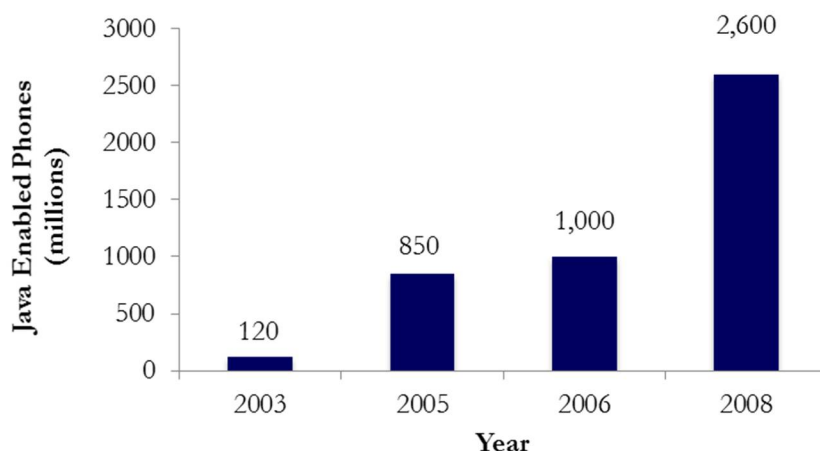
¹⁵⁶ OAGOOGL0100167800.

¹⁵⁷ OAGOOGL02000003714.

¹⁵⁸ See, e.g., OAGOOGL0100167800.

¹⁵⁹ Natasha Lomas, *A Look Back On Symbian On The Eve Of Its Demise*, June 13, 2013 (<http://techcrunch.com/2013/06/13/rip-symbian/>). Retrieved February 1, 2016.

¹⁶⁰ Nokia, <http://company.nokia.com/en/news/press-releases/2008/12/02/nokia-acquires-symbian-limited> (Last visited December 21, 2015).

Figure 24: Early Java Mobile Phone Shipments (2003-2008)¹⁶¹

b) Java in Mobile Applications

128. In addition to being present on a majority of mobile devices, Java played an early role in the emerging mobile app economy. Early Java-powered applications included general publishers (*e.g.*, New York Times, Mapquest), social messaging (Yahoo! Messenger), and e-commerce (*e.g.*, eBay and Amazon).¹⁶² Sun also operated a marketplace that allowed handset users to access games, music, maps, news, and lifestyle apps.¹⁶³ And, in keeping with its practice of extending Java into an array of form factors, Sun announced in 2007 the launch of JavaFX, “a new family of Java technology-based products designed to make it easier to build rich Web sites and Java applications across a broad range of devices.”¹⁶⁴ In an early presentation, seen in Figure 25 below, Sun highlighted these categories as well as many of the early Java-powered apps.

¹⁶¹ See Exhibit 20.

¹⁶² GOOGLE-01-00018140, at 146.

¹⁶³ GOOGLE-01-00018140, at 147.

¹⁶⁴ Java Timeline, Java, <http://oracle.com.edgesuite.net/timeline/java/> (last visited February 8, 2016)

Figure 25: Java Mobile Presence (2005-2006)¹⁶⁵

129. In 2003, Java apps were supported by at least four major wireless carriers and their devices. AT&T provided its users access to 162 Java games and 12 Java “info” apps; Cingular supported 24 Java games; Nextel provided 113 Java games and 64 “business tools”; and Sprint gave users access to 125 Java games and 20 Java apps categorized as “non-games.”¹⁶⁶

4) Conclusion

130. In the mid-2000s, as user preferences evolved and smartphone adoption increased, Oracle was well-positioned to enjoy the benefits of the rapidly growing market. Sun had established itself as the leading mobile application platform. Google had established its role as the dominant PC internet search advertising firm. The rise of mobile introduced significant risk to Google’s market position and the speed of user adoption of mobile phones and competitive offerings looking to capture that adoption set the firms on a course that was to become the subject of this matter.

131. In the next section, I describe the events leading to the conduct at issue, highlighting the economic, technological and market forces that influenced the behavior of Google and Oracle.

¹⁶⁵ GOOGLE-01-00018140, at 146.

¹⁶⁶ Derek Kerton & Bin Hu, Java-Wireless Application Strategies Among US Mobile Operators (2003), <http://www.kertongroup.com/papers/JavaAbstract.pdf>.

V. GOOGLE'S CONDUCT

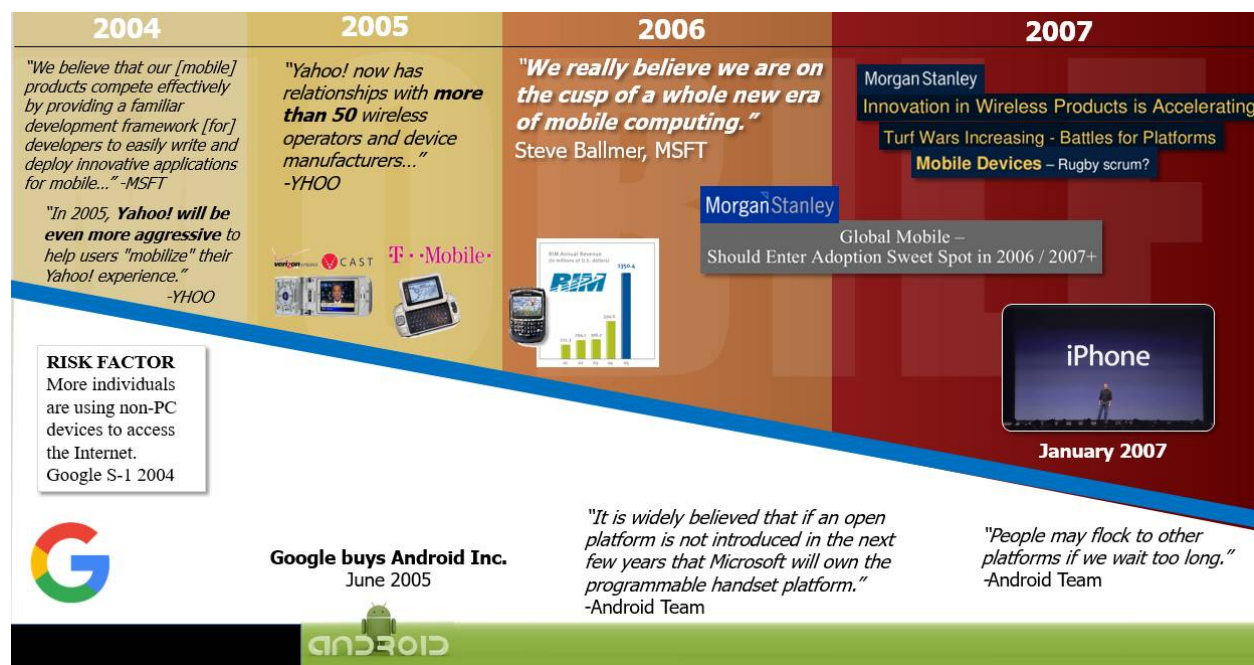
132. In this section, I move from the larger industry and technological trends and the histories of the players to the conduct at issue in this case. Namely, I discuss the specific situations that Sun and Google faced with the rise of mobile. It was the opportunity and challenge of this new mobile technology revolution that led the companies together and to the conduct at issue in this case.

133. In the early 2000s, Google recognized that the landscape of the Internet was changing, and that mobile was existentially significant to the future of its advertising-based business model.¹⁶⁷ As I describe above, the vast majority of Google's revenues came from search advertising. Google knew that if another player were to beat Google in the mobile search market, that player could undermine Google's PC search dominance and its long-term competitive position. As the use of mobile devices expanded, so did search and its attendant advertising revenue. To maintain search leadership and expand revenues, Google had to navigate a difficult and complex competitive landscape. In 2005, Google purchased Android Inc., in order to help realize its mobile strategy and fend off competition.¹⁶⁸ Through 2005 and 2006, key industry participants and analysts discussed the threats and opportunities presented by mobile. In 2007, the urgency with which Google needed to launch its Android platform increased significantly, with the launch of Apple's iPhone in January of that year.

134. Figure 26 below highlights key examples demonstrating the closing window of opportunity Google faced with respect to mobile.

¹⁶⁷ Google SEC Form 10-K (2004), at 58; GOOG-00100518-523.

¹⁶⁸ GOOGLE-58-00048925, at -926.

Figure 26: Google's Window of Mobile Opportunity¹⁶⁹

A. Google's need to expand its mobile presence

135. By early 2005, Google acknowledged publicly that users were increasingly using their mobile devices and apps in the same ways as—and instead of—their PCs. Google's 2004 Annual Report included in its Risk Factors:

More individuals are using non-PC devices to access the Internet, and versions of our web search technology developed for these devices may not be widely adopted by users of these devices.

The number of people who access the Internet through devices other than personal computers, including mobile telephones, hand-held calendaring and email assistants, and television set-top devices, has increased dramatically in the past few years. The lower resolution, functionality and memory associated with alternative devices make the use of our products and services through such devices difficult. If we are unable to attract and retain a substantial number of alternative device users to our web search services or if we are slow to develop products and technologies that are more compatible with non-PC communications devices, we will fail to capture a significant share of an increasingly important portion of the market for online services.¹⁷⁰

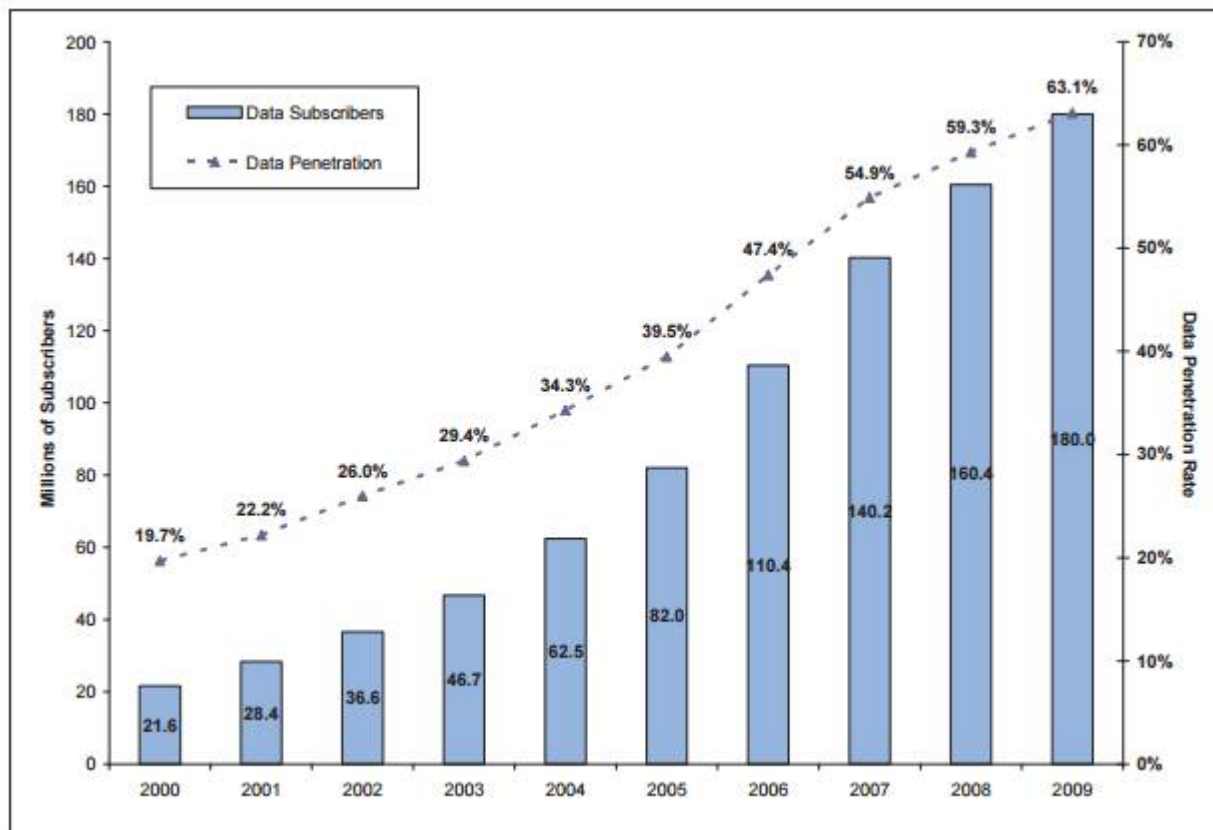
136. Google's risk statement reflects the industry trend of increasing use of mobile devices for purposes beyond phone calls, including wireless activities such as web browsing and search. By 2004, use

¹⁶⁹ See Exhibit 21.

¹⁷⁰ Google SEC Form 10-K (2004)(released in March 2005), at 58 (emphasis in original)..

of web-enabled phones was on a path of increasing growth. A 2010 study by the Federal Communications Commission pictured below in Figure 27 reflects this early trend in mobile.

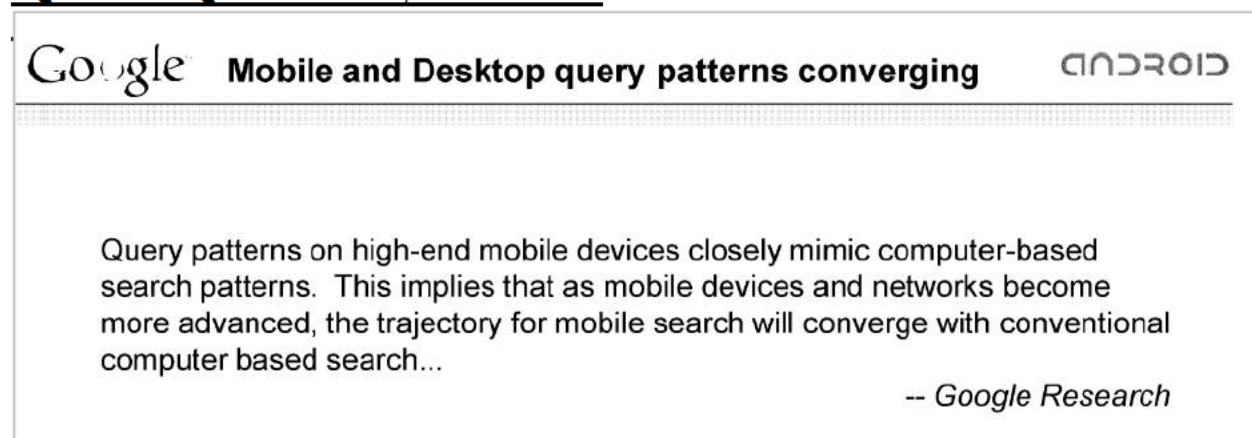
Figure 27: Mobile Data Subscribers and Penetration Rates (2000-2009)¹⁷¹



137. As you can see in Figure 27 above, mobile data subscribers in the United States increased nearly ten times from 2000 to 2009.

138. The adoption of an alternative means of accessing the web was important to Google, as it observed early on that the uses of mobile search were similar to those of PC search, the driver of its lucrative advertising business. Figure 28 below from a Google internal presentation, notes this convergence.

¹⁷¹ FCC 10-81, Annual Report and Analysis of Competitive Market Conditions with Respect to Commercial Mobile Services, Fourteenth Report, May 20, 2010, p. 95 (Data provided by Credit Suisse First Boston).

Figure 28: Google Presentation, “Android 101”¹⁷²

139. Throughout this time period, key Google rivals Microsoft and Yahoo! were similarly focused on the mobile market.¹⁷³

140. Yahoo! included a nearly identical risk statement to that of Google in its Annual Report in 2002: “More individuals are utilizing non-PC devices to access the Internet, and we may not be successful in developing a version of our service that will gain widespread adoption by users of such devices.”¹⁷⁴ Like Google, as early as 2004 Yahoo! was positioning itself to capture mobile search share. Then-Chairman and CEO of Yahoo! Terry Semel expressed Yahoo!’s explicit strategy to aggressively pursue mobile users: “On the wireless side, while Yahoo! has already deployed a number of our services with the major carriers in the U.S., such as Cingular, Sprint and Verizon Wireless, we are just at the beginning. In 2005, Yahoo! will be even more aggressive to help users ‘mobilize’ their Yahoo! experience.”¹⁷⁵ Semel’s 2005 Letter to Shareholders touted progress in securing important mobile partnerships: “Yahoo! now has relationships with more than 50 wireless operators and device manufacturers in 26 countries including major new relationships with Cingular, Motorola and Nokia in 2005.”¹⁷⁶

¹⁷² GOOG-00292191, at -2199.

¹⁷³ Google Form S-1 (2004), at 67. (“We face formidable competition in every aspect of our business, and particularly from other companies that seek to connect people with information on the web and provide them with relevant advertising. Currently, we consider our primary competitors to be Microsoft and Yahoo.”)

¹⁷⁴ Yahoo! SEC Form 10-K (2002), at 17.

¹⁷⁵ Yahoo! Letter to Shareholders, Yahoo! 2004 Annual Report (2004), at 4.

¹⁷⁶ Yahoo! Letter to Shareholders, Yahoo! 2005 Annual Report (2005), at 4.

141. Google's other primary competitor at the time, Microsoft, was also focused on mobile, in a manner that would prove highly similar to Google's mobile platform strategy. In 2004, Microsoft described the Mobile and Embedded Devices segment in its Annual Report:

We believe that our products compete effectively by providing a familiar development framework that enables developers to easily write and deploy innovative applications for mobile or embedded devices; providing a flexible platform that allows customers and partners to build differentiated and profitable business models.¹⁷⁷

This approach would later prove to be very similar to Google's approach to building its mobile presence, and would result in a competition among platforms.

142. The technology industry was abuzz with the importance of mobile. Morgan Stanley's 2006 annual presentation on Global Internet Trends quoted several technology executives describing the importance of mobile, as shown below in Figure 29.

¹⁷⁷ Microsoft SEC Form 10-K (2004), at 10.

Figure 29: Business Leaders Tell Story (2006)¹⁷⁸



B. The Android platform strategy

143. Against a backdrop of consumers' shifting use from desktop to mobile and key mobile industry players positioning for market dominance, Google decided to embark on building a mobile application platform that it could control. To help realize these strategic goals, Google acquired Android Inc. in 2005.¹⁷⁹

144. In addition to acquiring Android Inc. and beginning to develop its mobile platform, Google began optimizing and modifying its core products and services to serve the mobile market. In June 2005, Google unveiled Mobile Web Search, an interface specially formulated for viewing search results on mobile

¹⁷⁸ Meeker, Mary et al. Global Internet Trends, Morgan Stanley. (April 7, 2006), at 39.

¹⁷⁹ *Google Buys Android for its Mobile Arsenal*, Bloomberg Business, <http://www.bloomberg.com/bw/stories/2005-08-16/google-buys-android-for-its-mobile-arsenal>.

phones.¹⁸⁰ In December 2005, Gmail for mobile launched in the United States. Over the next few years, Google optimized its successful AdSense platform for mobile¹⁸¹ and continued to develop downloadable apps like Google Maps¹⁸² and a downloadable Google iPhone app,¹⁸³ showing a commitment to translating its core advertising business to the mobile arena.

1) Android development 2005-2006

145. Android Inc. was founded by Andy Rubin in 2003 with the intention of developing an advanced application platform for mobile devices. In June 2005, Google acquired Android Inc. for a “Closing Purchase Price” of \$11 million, with the possibility of an additional \$60 million in milestone payments, conditioned on time-to-market and sales milestones.¹⁸⁴

146. With the acquisition of Android Inc. came its engineering team led by Andy Rubin. As I discussed above, Rubin had previously started Danger, Inc., the firm that launched the Java-licensed Hiptop mobile phone. Rubin led Google’s Android platform development with a “skunkworks” team of engineering, shielded away from the rest of Google.¹⁸⁵

147. The Android project was, of course, strategically important to Google. The shifting technological landscape and competitive threats described above put significant pressure on the Android team to deliver a solution to market quickly. Correspondence shows the time pressure that the Android team faced to get to market quickly. In a 2005 email to Android engineer Richard Miner, Rubin states:

It is widely believed that if an open platform is not introduced in the next few years then Microsoft will own the programmable handset platform: Palm is dying, RIM is a one-trick-pony, and while Symbian is growing market share it's becoming a Nokia only solution.¹⁸⁶

The same email further detailed steps required to be successful in winning the platform battle, including Google’s need to secure partnerships with carriers.

¹⁸⁰ "Our history in depth," Google website, (<https://www.google.com/about/company/history/>)

¹⁸¹ See *id.* (AdSense for mobile announced September 2007, “giving sites optimized for mobile browsers the ability to host the same ads as standard websites”).

¹⁸² See *id.* (Google Maps comes to mobile phones in the US April 2005).

¹⁸³ See *id.* (Downloadable Google iPhone app launched July 2008).

¹⁸⁴ GOOGLE-00303922, at -3929.

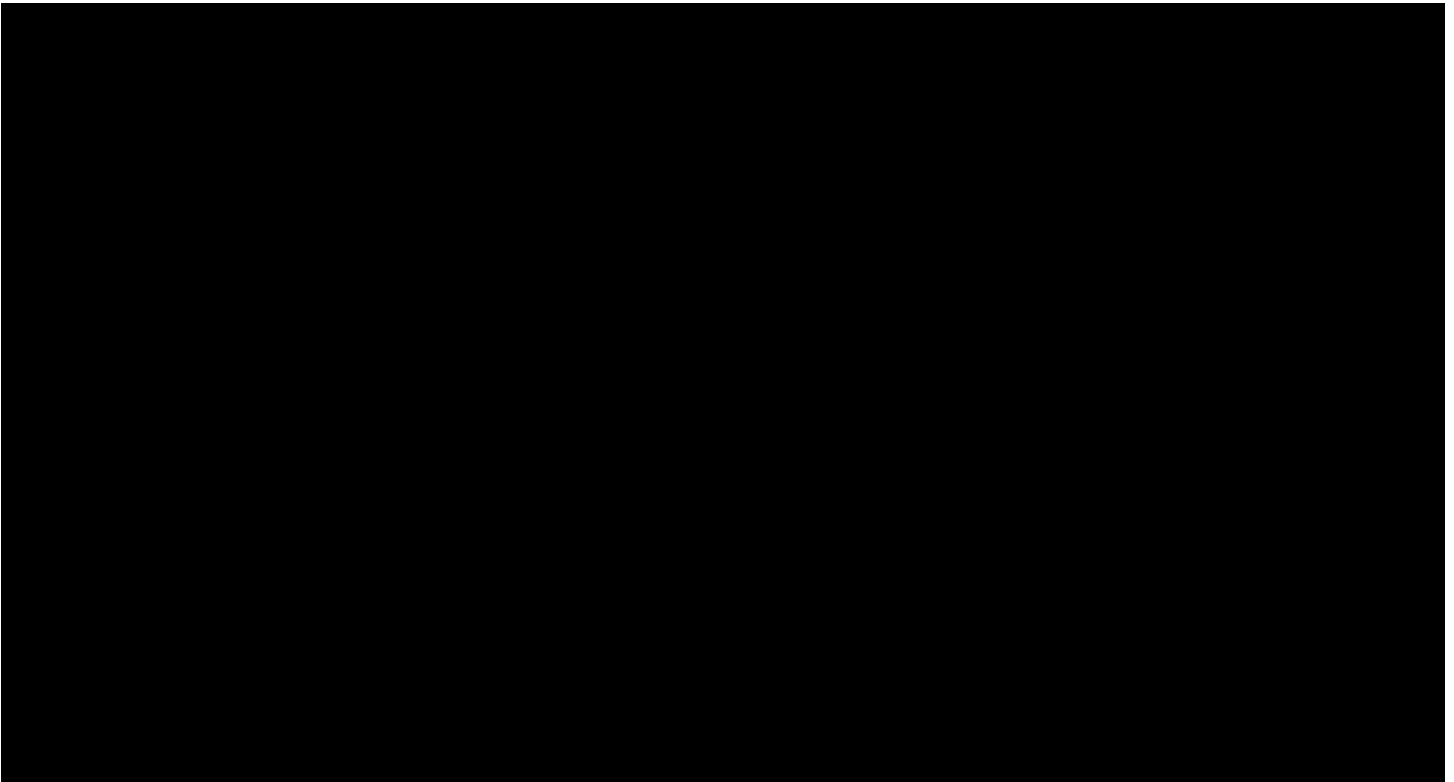
¹⁸⁵ Deposition of Urs Hoesle, November 24, 2015, p.56.

¹⁸⁶ GOOGLE-01-00019529-532 (TX 0008). See also, GOOGLE-67-00040897 (“Plan: Beat Microsoft and Symbian to volume by offering an Open Source handset solution”).

[I]t is key to get strong carrier support. While our technical leadership in search should be a huge advantage, it is considered a threat by many of the carriers. The quickest way to defuse this issue is to accelerate the advertising marketplace concept with contractual partnerships with carriers based on rev-share. Demonstrate to them the ARPU upside for our top 3 applications (search, gmail, maps/local). Model their bandwidth costs and provide to them a spreadsheet that shows them net upside. Our biggest selling point will be to show them how our advertiser network will enable them to increase data ARPU without cannibalizing existing voice revenue. The best way to do this is increase subscriber revenue through 3rd party advertisers. None of the search competitors (especially startups) have the story that Google has.¹⁸⁷

148. Google's ability to incentivize partners through revenue sharing payments from advertising is significant, and was a key pillar of their pitch to carriers. Several Google presentations developed in late 2006 and early 2007 for meetings with carriers echo the strategy described in the email above. For example, a 2006 pitch presentation to Sprint describes Google's proposed partnership economics, as shown below in Figure 30.

Figure 30: Partnership Economics - Sprint presentation (2006)¹⁸⁸



¹⁸⁷ GOOGLE-01-00019529, at -9530.

¹⁸⁸ GOOGLE-24-00206924, at -6947.73

In the 2005 Andy Rubin e-mail I referenced above, Google perceived its competitive threat to come from Microsoft. While the source of competition turned out to be misperceived, Google's need to get to market was not. Apple's introduction of the iPhone would indeed change the industry and put even more pressure on the Android team.

149. On January 9, 2007, Apple announced the iPhone. Apple's then-CEO, Steve Jobs, said "iPhone is a revolutionary and magical product that is literally five years ahead of any other mobile phone."¹⁸⁹ The new product announcement was incredibly well-received by users and investors alike. Apple's stock price closed at a record high on the day of the announcement. And other mobile device makers observed Apple's runaway hit.¹⁹⁰

150. While the announcement came six months prior to its actual release, the hype of the iPhone continued in anticipation of the release. Before it was even on-sale, the iPhone had been the subject of 11,000 print articles and roughly 69 million search hits on Google.¹⁹¹ Sentiments were that the iPhone, while not perfect, lived up to the hype preceding its release. The New York Times reported, "But even in version 1.0, the iPhone is still the most sophisticated, outlook-changing piece of electronics to come along in years. It does so many things so well, and so pleasurably, that you tend to forgive its foibles."¹⁹² The influential Walter Mossberg of the Wall Street Journal had a similar reaction, "the iPhone is, on balance, a beautiful and breakthrough handheld computer."¹⁹³

151. With the hype and early success of the iPhone after launch, Google had to re-think its Android efforts. Early Android team member Chris DeSalvo reacted to the iPhone release, "As a consumer I was blown away. I wanted one immediately. But as a Google engineer, I thought 'We're going to have to start over,'" Ethan Beard, an early Android business development executive remarked, "We knew that Apple was going to announce a phone. Everyone knew that. We just didn't think it would be that good."¹⁹⁴

¹⁸⁹ *Apple Reinvents the Phone with iPhone*, Apple (Jan. 9, 2007), <http://www.apple.com/pr/library/2007/01/09Apple-Reinvents-the-Phone-with-iPhone.html>.

¹⁹⁰ John Markoff, *Apple Introduces Innovative Cellphone*, New York Times (Jan. 10, 2007), <http://www.nytimes.com/2007/01/10/technology/10apple.html>.

¹⁹¹ David Pogue, *The iPhone Matches Most of Its Hype*, New York Times (Jun. 27, 2007), <http://www.nytimes.com/2007/06/27/technology/circuits/27pogue.html>.

¹⁹² David Pogue, *The iPhone Matches Most of Its Hype*, New York Times (Jun. 27, 2007), <http://www.nytimes.com/2007/06/27/technology/circuits/27pogue.html>.

¹⁹³ Walter Mossberg, *Testing Out the iPhone*, The Wall Street Journal (Jun. 27, 2007), <http://www.wsj.com/articles/SB118289311361649057>.

¹⁹⁴ Fred Vogelstein, *The Day Google had to 'Start Over' on Android*, The Atlantic (Dec. 18, 2013), <http://www.theatlantic.com/technology/archive/2013/12/the-day-google-had-to-start-over-on-android/282479/>.

152. In response to the iPhone, the Android team was forced to shift gears. They had been working on a phone, code-named the “Sooner,” which looked more like a BlackBerry than the iPhone, as shown below in Figure 31.

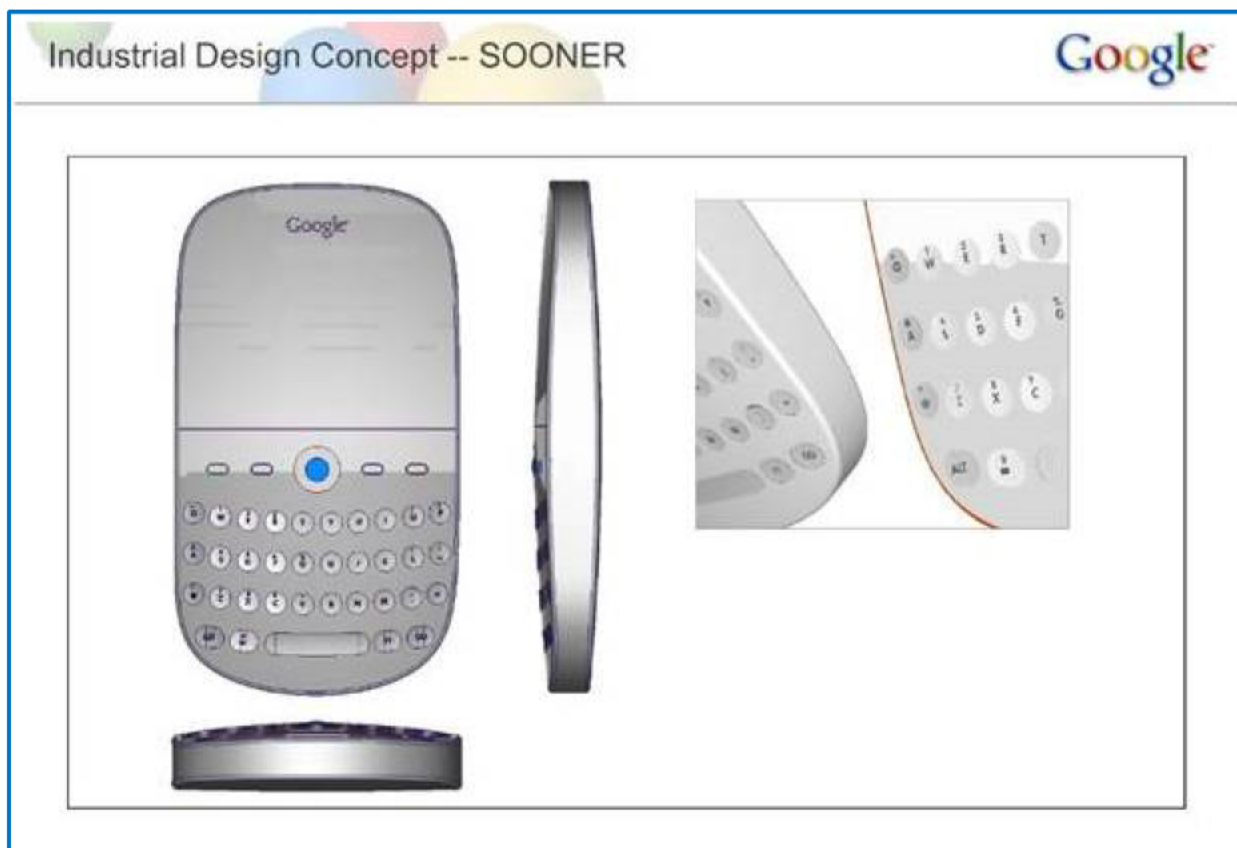


Figure 31: Design Concept for Sooner¹⁹⁵

153. After the Apple release, Andy Rubin noted, “Holy crap, I guess we’re not going to ship that phone [the Sooner].”¹⁹⁶ Instead, the Android team shifted its efforts to developing a touchscreen phone, code-named the Dream, set to launch in 2008.¹⁹⁷

154. In November 2007, Google announced Android, its application platform for mobile devices.¹⁹⁸ With a royalty-free licensing model and a program of incentive payments to OEMs, Google successfully

¹⁹⁵ GOOGLE-81-00007497, at 509.

¹⁹⁶ Fred Vogelstein, *The Day Google had to ‘Start Over’ on Android*, The Atlantic (Dec. 18, 2013), <http://www.theatlantic.com/technology/archive/2013/12/the-day-google-had-to-start-over-on-android/282479/>.

¹⁹⁷ Fred Vogelstein, *The Day Google had to ‘Start Over’ on Android*, The Atlantic (Dec. 18, 2013), <http://www.theatlantic.com/technology/archive/2013/12/the-day-google-had-to-start-over-on-android/282479/>.

recruited a number of high profile OEMs to its Open Handset Alliance (“OHA”).¹⁹⁹ In so doing, Google Chairman and CEO Eric Schmidt stated: “Today's announcement is more ambitious than any single ‘Google Phone’ that the press has been speculating about over the past few weeks. Our vision is that the powerful platform we're unveiling will power thousands of different phone models.”²⁰⁰ Soon after, in October 2008, Google and T-Mobile launched the first Android phone, the HTC Dream (the device featured above in Figure 31).²⁰¹ Along with the product launch, Google also announced an Android app store.²⁰²

2) Android business strategy

155. Google had a four-phase strategy designed to protect Google’s search business by building and controlling the ecosystem of the (then) future mobile market. Figure 32 below from a July 2010 Android presentation to Google’s Operating Committee lays out the Android roadmap.

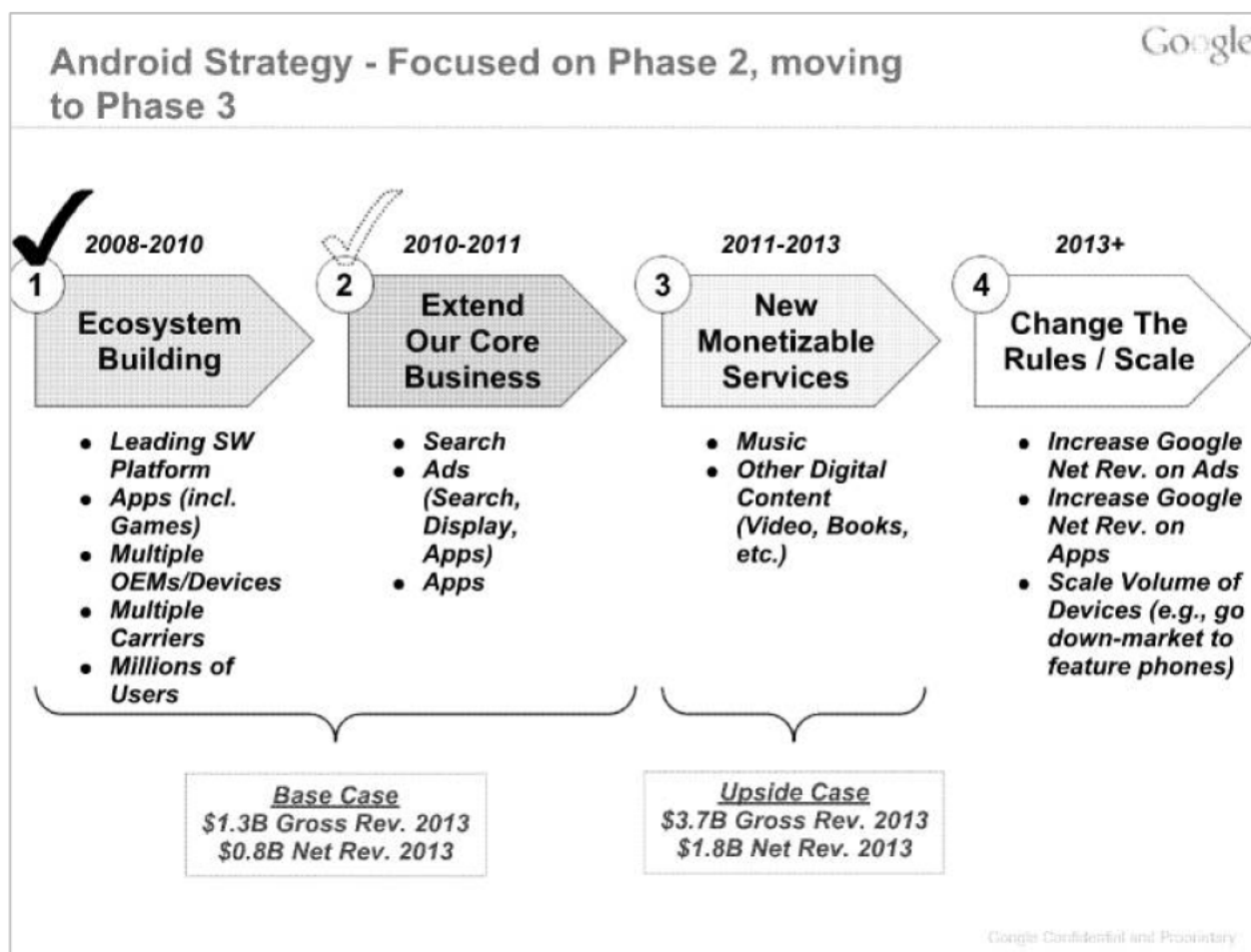
¹⁹⁸ Google simultaneously announced the formation of the Open Handset Alliance (“OHA”). The OHA began as a group of thirty-four companies in the mobile space including Google, T-Mobile, HTC, Qualcomm, Motorola, Sony, and Samsung. *Industry Leaders Announce Open Platform for Mobile Devices*, Open Handset Alliance (Nov. 5, 2007), http://www.openhandsetalliance.com/press_110507.html.

¹⁹⁹ *Industry Leaders Announce Open Platform for Mobile Devices*, Open Handset Alliance (Nov. 5, 2007), http://www.openhandsetalliance.com/press_110507.html.

²⁰⁰ *Industry Leaders Announce Open Platform for Mobile Devices*, Open Handset Alliance (Nov. 5, 2007), http://www.openhandsetalliance.com/press_110507.html.

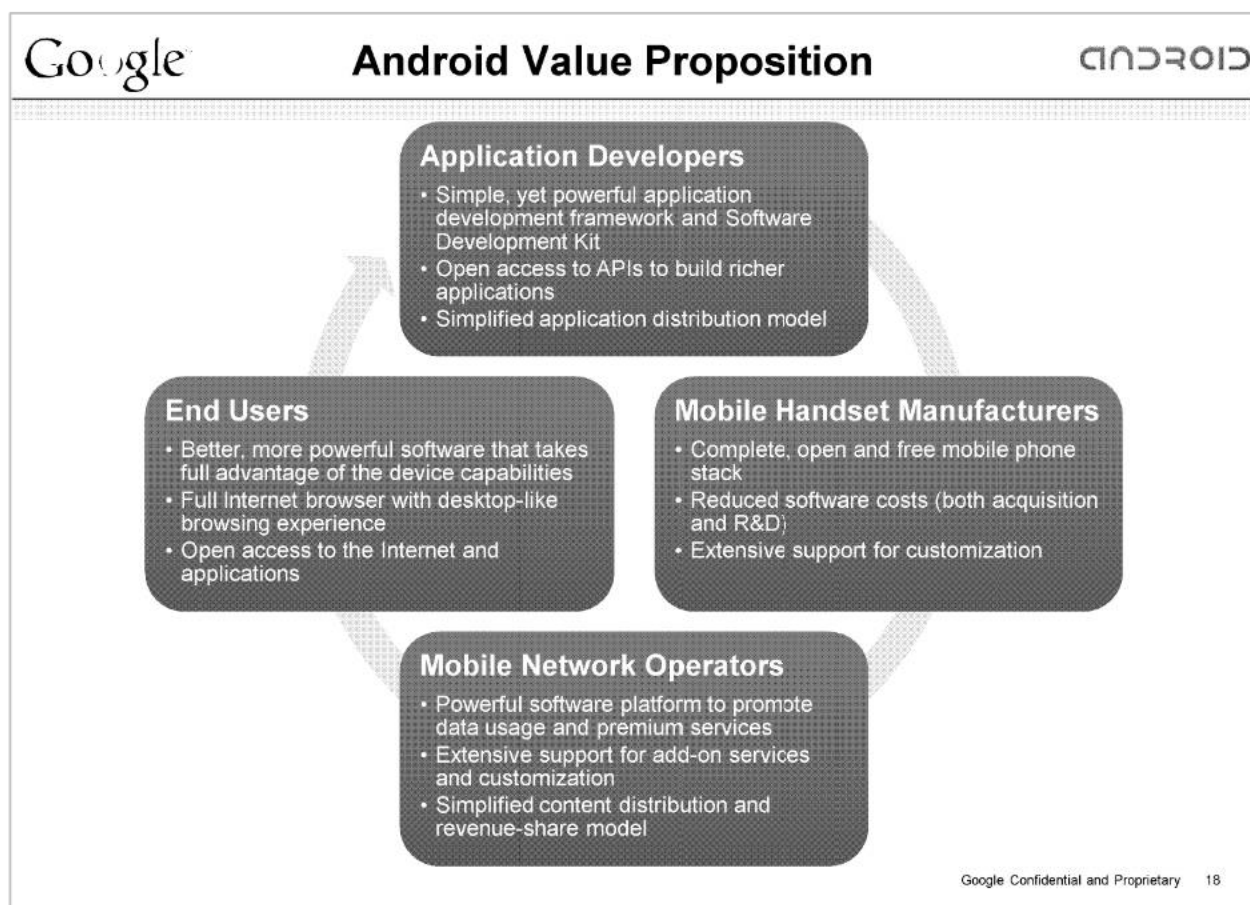
²⁰¹ Kent German, *A Brief History of Android Phones*, Cnet (Aug. 2, 2011), <http://www.cnet.com/news/a-brief-history-of-android-phones/>.

²⁰² Mark Wilson, *T-Mobile G1: Full Details of the HTC Dream Android Phone*, Gizmodo (Sept. 23, 2008), <http://gizmodo.com/5053264/t-mobile-g1-full-details-of-the-htc-dream-android-phone>. The original Android App store is now known as the “Google Play Store.”

Figure 32: Android Four Phase Strategy²⁰³

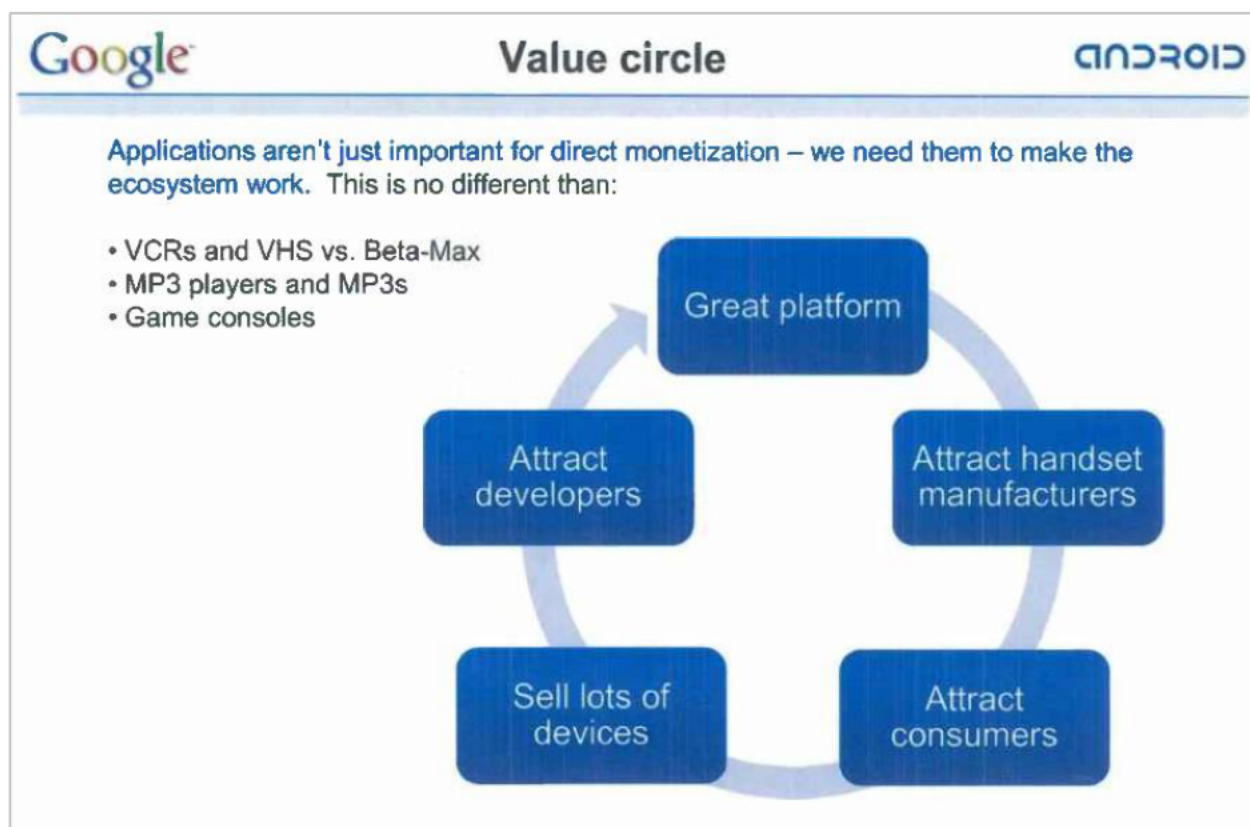
156. The first phase, “Ecosystem Building,” required that Google quickly create a “Leading SW [Software] Platform.” Google understood that Android would deliver value to a number of platform constituents, as shown below in Figure 33.

²⁰³ TX 1061.

Figure 33: Android Value Proposition (2010)²⁰⁴

157. Google realized that establishing this platform would create a positive feedback loop, or “Value Circle,” as shown below in Figure 34.

²⁰⁴ TX 31 (GOOGLE-00298438, at -8455).

Figure 34: Android “Value circle” (2010)²⁰⁵

158. Google’s desire to build a mobile app developer community led it to the Java platform. Google’s vision for how Android would reach this position in the mobile ecosystem was summarized in a 2009 strategy presentation, where the vision for Android was stated as, “Give it away for free, and aggressively build a **developer ecosystem to drive innovation and platform adoption.**”²⁰⁶ A contemporaneous Verizon ad for an Android phone, in Figure 35 below, shows just how important the app ecosystem was to Google’s value proposition to users.

²⁰⁵ GOOGLE-22-00060007, at -039.

²⁰⁶ GOOGLE-22-00060007, at -015 (emphasis in original).

Figure 35: Verizon Ad for Android Phone (2010)²⁰⁷



C. Google copies Java API packages without a license or permission

159. Between 2005 and 2009, Sun and Google were in discussions over a license agreement for Google to use the Java platform in Android.²⁰⁸ The first round of discussions was known as “Project

²⁰⁷ GOOG-00109204.

²⁰⁸ GOOGLE-12-00000544, at -0544-45 (Negotiations started in August 2005 when Andrew Rubin emails Leo Cizek, Google Account Manager at Sun, to work on Android together). OAGOOGL0000150908 (“I also explained

Armstrong” and took place from August 2005 to May 2006.²⁰⁹ The second series of discussions occurred in the Fall of 2008, then again in the Spring of 2009, and then again after Oracle acquired Sun in 2010.²¹⁰ I understand that an agreement was not reached.

160. After the first set of negotiations with Sun did not result in an agreement, Google chose to copy Sun’s Java API packages anyway, and to launch the Android mobile application platform based on those copied Java API packages. I understand that all commercially released versions of Android contain the 37 APIs copied from Java.²¹¹ More specifically as to those 37 Java API packages, Google copied the API declaring code verbatim. This copying included not only the code itself, but also the structure, sequence and organization of the components of the 37 API packages.²¹²

161. Google’s choice of Java was driven by many of the concerns inherent in platform economics. For example, Java had an established ecosystem which includes the following attributes: (1) widespread acceptance among vital platform partners like OEMs and wireless carriers²¹³; (2) a familiar, well-tested applications platform that ran predictably on numerous accepted systems²¹⁴; (3) a stable, educated, deep-rooted developer community with millions of members who were ready and able to develop rich apps²¹⁵; and (4) the ability to reach market faster with a technically stable, lower-risk commercially successful product.²¹⁶

that if they choose the commercial use/compatible option, it would have ramifications throughout Google, and I gave Android as an example.”).

²⁰⁹ GOOGLE-12-00000544, at -0544-45 (Negotiations started in August 2005 when Andrew Rubin emails Leo Cizek, Google Account Manager at Sun, to work on Android together). OAGOOGL0100168421 (“Andy informed me that he has been asked by his GC to hold off any meetings until the patent issue is resolved.”)

²¹⁰ See, e.g., GOOGLE-01-00063286, TX 10 (GOOGLE-12-10000022).

²¹¹ Expert Report of Robert Zeidman, Jan. 8, 2016.

²¹² Expert Report of Robert Zeidman, Jan. 8, 2016.

²¹³ See, e.g., GOOGLE-12-00003871, at 873; GOOGLE-01-00017154 (“Why Java?” carriers require it.”); GOOGLE-01-00019511 (“The nature of the cellular market is that we are *require* to have java due to carrier requirements, etc.”); TX 7 (GOOGLE-01-00019527 (“carriers require managed code”)); GOOGLE-04-00055169 (“We can’t get out of the gates without [Carriers] and [OEMs]”); GOOGLE-26-00025071 (“The carriers are the customers of cell phones – not the end users.”).

²¹⁴ See, e.g., TX 7 (GOOGLE-01-00019527, at 527).

²¹⁵ See, e.g., TX 24 (GOOGLE-01-00025375 at 419 (“Strategy: Leverage Java for its existing base of developers.”); TX 21 (GOOGLE-02-00111218, at 218 (“If we play our cards right, we can also leverage not only existing developers, but applications as well.”)); GOOGLE-02-00081462.

²¹⁶ See, e.g., GOOGLE-01-00075935 at 935 (“We will ship a more stable product sooner if we do as much as possible in Java”).

162. These attributes satisfied Google's need to quickly attract a user base to Android in order to monetize its new applications platform.²¹⁷ In 2006, a time when Microsoft was still viewed as the likely mobile competitor, in an e-mail to his Android team, Andy Rubin articulated both the time pressure his team was under and the benefits of the Java platform to solve the need to attract developers: "We need to provide an alternative to MSFT, and we need to do it in such a way as we don't fragment 3rd party developers....Java has very little fragmentation, and it's adoptable. If we play our cards right, we can also leverage not only existing developers, but applications as well."²¹⁸

163. Without a competitive app marketplace—enabled by the millions of Java developers—Android devices would struggle to compete with Apple's iPhone.²¹⁹ Google also described concerns that delays in reaching market would result in former BlackBerry users migrating to iPhone instead of to Android, robbing Google of significant first-mover effects inherent in platform markets.²²⁰ The time-to-market advantage, in particular, was paramount to Google, as cited by Andy Rubin:

"[Y]ou have a window of opportunity in smartphones You have to ship as soon as feasibly possible. I mean, you go to extraordinary lengths to ship sooner, because it's a very dynamic market. And it could shift directions at any time *So my job . . . was to just do everything that I possibly could to get my solution to the market in the shortest time possible.*"²²¹

The time-to-market was also significant to the Android founding team financially. In its agreement to purchase Android, Inc., Google agreed to certain milestone payments contingent upon, among other things, securing a relationship with a major wireless carrier within 3 years.²²²

164. Google's willingness to knowingly copy Oracle's Java API packages and commercialized the Java-based Android platform without reference to the intellectual property rights of Oracle is another indication of the seriousness with which it took the pressure to get to market with a competitive mobile ecosystem. It is also further evidence of the import of the Java platform to those aspirations.

²¹⁷ See e.g., GOOGLE-22-00060007, at 0039.

²¹⁸ TX 21. (GOOGLE-02-00111218).

²¹⁹ See GOOGLE-00302808, at 808 ("[W]e need to provide at least 70% to the developer to make [Android] Market competitive with other app stores (e.g., iPhone App Store).").

²²⁰ See GOOGLE-00383073, at 075.

²²¹ Deposition of Andrew Rubin, July 27, 2011, at pg. 180:1-12.

²²² GOOGLE-00303922, at -3929, -3931, -4000.

165. Google was well aware of its obligation to obtain a license and of the litigation risk in its conduct. The head of Android and Android's original engineers knew they needed a license and were familiar with Sun's Java licensing scheme. Andy Rubin, while at Danger and Android Inc., negotiated with Sun for a Java commercial license.²²³ And Danger, indeed, took a Java license for Java ME from Sun.²²⁴ Android's lead virtual machine engineer Daniel Bornstein and senior staff engineer Brian Swetland worked with Rubin both at Danger and Android Inc.. Another engineer, Hiroshi Lockheimer, worked with Rubin at Danger.²²⁵

166. Soon after acquiring Android, Google concluded that it "must take [a] license from Sun" and that an ex-Sun employee, Tim Lindholm, would "support [the Android team in] negotiat[ing] the first OSS J2ME JVM license with Sun."²²⁶ Mr. Lindholm's role during these negotiations took "mostly [] the form of helping negotiate with [his] old team at Sun for a critical license."²²⁷ Tim Lindholm was a distinguished Java engineer at Sun for over a decade before joining Google.²²⁸ Google also noted in an internal presentation that if it could not agree to a co-development partnership with Sun, it would have to take a license from Sun for Android's use of Java." In the month before Google completed its acquisition of Android, another Google presentation concluded that Google "[m]ust take [a] license from Sun." That same month Andy Rubin sent an email to Tim Lindholm of Google that attached a document regarding Google's discussions about licensing Java from Sun that stated "Google needs a TCK license."

167. After Google completed its acquisition of Android, Andy Rubin articulated two options if the negotiations with Sun failed: "If Sun doesn't want to work with us, we have two options: 1) Abandon our work and adopt MSFT CLR VM and C# language – or 2) Do Java anyway and defend our decision, perhaps making enemies along the way."²²⁹

168. In a 2006 email to Google engineering manager Greg Stein, Rubin wrote, "Java.lang apis are copyrighted. And sun gets to say who they license the tck to"²³⁰ Google continued to recognize that

²²³ Deposition of Vineet Gupta, July 26, 2011, at pg. 102:4-23 (Danger negotiation); Deposition of Leo Cizek, July 22, 2011, at pg. 76:3-11 (Android Inc. negotiation).

²²⁴ Deposition of Andy Rubin, July 27, 2011, at pg. 77:7-8 ("at Danger, we entered into a licensing agreement with Sun"); Trial Transcript of Brian Swetland, April 20, 2012, at pg. 950:9-14; OAGOOGL0100036648.

²²⁵ Trial Transcript of Brian Swetland, April 20, 2012, at pg. 953-954.

²²⁶ TX 1 (GOOGLE-00-00001772).

²²⁷ TX 17.

²²⁸ Deposition of Tim Lindholm, September 7, 2011, at pg. 6:22-8:11.

²²⁹ TX 7 (GOOGLE-01-00019527-528 at 528).

²³⁰ TX 18 (GOOGLE-01-00018470)

it needed a license and that the Java APIs were copyrighted.²³¹ And Sun continued to ask Google to obtain a Java license.²³²

169. After bringing Android to the market, Google acknowledged the looming lawsuit it would surely face because of its unauthorized copying of Java in Android.²³³ In August 2010, Mr. Lindholm wrote to Andy Rubin that Google's founders Larry Page and Sergey Brin had asked him "to investigate what technical alternatives exist to Java. . . ." ²³⁴ Lindholm added that his team had "been over a bunch of [alternatives to Java]" and that "they all suck."²³⁵ His conclusion was "that [Google] need[ed] to negotiate a license for Java" ²³⁶

D. Android copying of API packages

170. I understand that a jury found that Google infringed Oracle's copyrights in Java SE 1.4 and Java SE 5 in all commercially released versions of Android (up through Froyo) by copying the structure, sequence and organization of the 37 Java API packages as reflected in the actual code that Google acknowledged it had reproduced. As I understand from the report of Robert Zeidman, Google continued to copy the actual code and the structure, sequence and organization for the 37 Java API packages in Android Versions 2.3 (Gingerbread, API level 9) and continued to 5.1 (Lollipop, API level 22) and through Marshmallow.

E. Incompatibility of Android and Java

171. Although Android copies a set of Java API packages, I understand that Android is not actually compatible with Java.²³⁷ This incompatibility is particularly meaningful, as it constitutes a violation of

²³¹ TX 326 (GOOGLE-12-00027267) ("Google buys the rights to Java from Sun (patents, copyrights, etc)"); TX 230 (GOOGLE-02-00020474) ("Sun has a different license for its library for SE and ME").

²³² TX 1002 (GOOGLE-01-00031204) ("Sun asked us to certify Android through the Java process and become licensees of Java")

²³³ TX 326 at GOOGLE-12-00027268 (dated February 19, 2009) (proposing "Google buys the rights to Java from Sun (patents, copyrights, etc)" and describing as "Good for Google" because "Our Java lawsuits go away"); Additional correspondence indicates that a Google engineer (formerly at Sun) remarked to Google executives that "we need to negotiate a license for Java under the terms we need." TX 10 (dated August 6, 2010).

²³⁴ TX 10 (GOOGLE-12-10000022).

²³⁵ TX 10.

²³⁶ TX 10.

²³⁷ Schmidt Report, ¶¶. See also, Deposition of Daniel Morrill, Jul. 12, 2011, at pg. 87 ("A. Because we were frequently reminded that Android is not Java compatible and that it would be technically inaccurate to describe it as Java compatible, this was repeated frequently and took on, you know, the sense of a broken record."); Deposition of Owen Astrachan, Nov. 9, 2011, p. 280:5-25 ("There are Java programs that... would not run on Android" and later "Any Android programs that use non-Java APIs are not going to run on a Java Virtual Machine").

Java's promise to developers of "write once, run anywhere." To ensure compatibility, Java provides and requires that licensees pass its standard compatibility test (the TCK as I discussed earlier). Professor Doug Schmidt had Android tested for compatibility against the Java TCK; Java-based Android failed the tests.²³⁸

F. Conclusion

172. By the mid-2000s, Java had developed over approximately 15 years to become one of the most widely-used software application platforms in the world. The Java platform was pre-eminent in its role as the software platform for seamless interaction between devices and applications. It had played this role in PCs, in laptops, in servers, in PDAs, in phones, and many other kinds of devices. As the mobile phone revolution took off, Java was poised to take off with it. But Google chose not to license Java. Google also chose not to create its own platform from scratch, because Google understood that it needed a means of rapid entry and adoption by developers and partners (such as OEMs and carriers) to compete. And Google determined that such rapid entry and adoption could not be achieved without Java.

173. Google's Java-based Android, and the large Java developer base that Sun had built, became very successful. Android, together with the iPhone, came to dominate the exploding mobile device market. As a result, Android crowded Oracle's Java platform out of the most important device category of the last decade, with substantial, adverse consequences to Oracle that will continue indefinitely because of the dynamic nature of platform competition. In the remaining sections of my report, I investigate these effects through the specific lens of the fair use factors.

VI. THE IMPORTANCE OF INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY AND COPYRIGHT PROTECTION

A. The economics of intellectual property

174. Copyrighted creative works are examples of "intellectual property" or "IP," which in the United States also includes patents, trademarks, and trade secrets. The economic function of intellectual property is to give people and companies that create something new a mechanism to preserve the value of such creations, and thereby create and maintain incentives for such creation.²³⁹ The idea that IP is valuable to promote creative activities is fundamental to United States civil society and even appears in the U.S.

²³⁸ Expert Report of Douglas Schmidt, January 8, 2016.

²³⁹ See, e.g., Arrow, Kenneth. "Economic welfare and the allocation of resources for invention." The rate and direction of inventive activity: Economic and social factors. Princeton University Press, 1962. 609-626. Or, Posner, Richard A., and William M. Landes. "The economic structure of intellectual property law." (2003), Besen, Stanley M., and Leo J. Raskind. "An introduction to the law and economics of intellectual property." The Journal of Economic Perspectives 5.1 (1991): 3-27.

Constitution: “The Congress shall have Power . . . To promote the Progress of Science and useful Arts, by securing for limited Times to Authors and Inventors the exclusive Right to their respective Writings and Discoveries.”²⁴⁰

175. Economically, the key feature of intellectual property is that the essence and hence the value of a creation can be separated (at least to some degree) from any physical object that might represent, use or embody that creative essence.²⁴¹ For example, if I build a better mousetrap, once I sell one to someone else, that buyer can, in principle, understand its design and that design can be separated from the specific mousetrap I sold. It can be represented in a blueprint or other formal specification, or it might be possible for someone simply to carry it around in his head. Similarly, if I write a song, it might be embodied in sheet music or a CD, but once someone has heard it he might also carry it around in his head.

176. Preventing the “theft” of intellectual property requires different measures than preventing the theft of physical property. If I buy or build myself a car, I can prevent your stealing it by locking it up, and whether I lock it up or not it is a crime for you to take it from me. But if I come up with a new *design* for a car or a car component that no one has ever thought of before, I cannot protect that creation in the same way. I might be able to keep it a secret, but in many cases, to realize the full value of the creation, I want to be able to sell objects that embody the creation to other people, and possibly many other people. If the creator sells the newly designed car to someone else, and that buyer copies the new design and sells the copy to a third party, the creative essence has been stolen, but no physical theft has occurred. Similarly, if I write a novel and sell you a bunch of paper on which the novel is reprinted, you could copy those pages and sell the copy to someone else without having taken any physical object away from me. Copyrights, patents and other forms of legal protection for IP are society’s way to prevent the theft of creative essence, by giving creators the right not just to possess their creations, but also to control the way in which those creations can be used by others.

177. The legal recognition of intellectual property through mechanisms such as copyright preserves the incentive for people to engage in creative activities, by giving them a measure of control over how their creations will be used. Absent such protection, valuable creations will likely be under-provided by the

²⁴⁰ U.S. Const., Art. I, § 8.

²⁴¹ Economists characterize most intellectual property as *nonrival* in that it can be used by multiple consumers at no additional marginal cost.

market.²⁴² The type of control in question takes the form of specific legal rights, and different forms of intellectual property provide somewhat different types and mechanisms of control.

178. In an economy that recognizes private property, these rights are the basis for a wide variety of economic transactions, and IP enforcement is motivated by a desire to achieve efficient outcomes.²⁴³ If I own a piece of land, I can choose to live on it myself (with or without constructing a building); I can rent it to someone else; I can sell it; or I can do absolutely nothing with it.²⁴⁴ While there are always some legal restrictions on my possible uses (e.g., I need a permit to use it for a toxic waste dump; I might be forced to sell it to the government if they are building a highway across it), subject to those restrictions the general presumption is that it is up to me to choose how to use it.

179. This same presumption also applies to IP; in other words, subject to specific restrictions, the IP owner may choose how to use it so as to encourage innovation and creation. In particular, the owner can sell it to someone else or rent it out. But the fact that IP is not inherently tied to any physical object makes these choices potentially more diverse and complicated than the choices available to the owner of physical property. While renting a given plot of land to multiple users is a somewhat complex undertaking, creative works are routinely “rented” to many different people at the same time. For this reason, we typically say that the owner is “licensing” the IP to users rather than “renting” it. Further, the separation of the IP from physical products makes it possible to “subdivide” the rights in complex ways. If someone wants to use a song in a commercial advertisement, he needs to get a license from the holder of the copyright on that song. But this could happen in many different ways. As with any “rental” contract, he could seek a license for a short time or an extended period. But there are other options as well: the license might cover only a particular ad, or a whole line of ads, or it might also cover other uses such as playing it at a convention. Typically, the license to use it in an ad would not cover the right to use it in making a movie. If the owner and a potential licensee agreed it could be licensed for any and all uses. Further, if a car maker is licensing a song to use in its car ad, it might want to ensure that the same song will not be licensed for any other car maker’s commercials. If the two parties agree, that condition could be included in the license contract.

²⁴² See, e.g., Nordhaus, William D., *Invention, Growth, and Welfare: A Theoretical Treatment of Technological Change*, MIT Press, 1969.

²⁴³ Coase, Ronald H., “The Problem of Social Cost,” *Journal of Law and Economics* 3.1, 1960.

²⁴⁴ Lately people have gotten more creative than ever with physical objects, as technology platforms have enable the “sharing economy.”

180. The fact that the same IP can be licensed to many different parties in different ways creates the possibility that the terms of licensing will differ by the context of use and the nature of the licensee. A copyright owner might judge that having her song sung by a particular artist or in a particular venue will increase the willingness of others to pay to use it, so she may be willing to license it for free under those conditions. More generally, a license is a potentially complex contractual agreement between the parties, with a variety of terms and conditions that cover payments between the parties, each party's rights, and restrictions on each party's actions. All else equal, the owner of the IP will give the licensee more flexible and broader use of the IP in return for more compensation, but will accept lower compensation (sometimes even zero) under restricted circumstances.

181. The separation of IP from physical objects also means that the legality of any use of IP is determined by the terms of the applicable license agreement, not by the physical pathway by which the user got access to the creative work (unless the license specifically addresses that issue). For example, I have for many years undertaken analysis of music licensing and music license royalties. In that work, I have become familiar with the general licenses required for the performance and copying of music. Bars or restaurants need the permission of the copyright holder in order to have a copyrighted song performed or played for customers. The American Society of Composers, Authors and Publishers (ASCAP) (and other similar organizations) licenses establishments to do this on behalf of copyright owners.²⁴⁵ A bar with an ASCAP license can play any ASCAP song, and ASCAP doesn't care if they play a CD, they turn on the radio, or they hire Suzie Singer to perform it live. Conversely, in the absence of such a license, ASCAP will claim that the bar is violating the composer's copyright by playing for its customers an ASCAP song from a CD (even though the maker of the CD got appropriate permission to record the song and sell the CD) or playing the radio for its customers (even though the radio station has an ASCAP license to broadcast the song over the airwaves). In this way, the right of public performance in a particular venue is a distinct right that can be separated from the rights to copy it or perform it in other contexts (such as singing it in the shower).

182. The potential complexity of licensing arrangements and the separation of the right to use IP from the acquisition of the protected creative material are important in the context of this case.²⁴⁶ The Java API packages at issue are libraries of copyrighted computer code written by Sun engineers. The code is widely

²⁴⁵ About ASCAP, ASCAP, <http://www.ascap.com/about>.

²⁴⁶ Also important to the existence of the separate right to license IP in an "open" way. These "open source" licenses remain enforceable on their own terms. Without copyright, there is no way to force compliance with such restrictions. Ultimately, then, "open source" licenses are another way that IP gives copyright holders the right to choose the means of dissemination. See Expert Report of Gwyn Murray, February 8, 2016.

available, published in various forms. But Oracle realizes the value of the creation of Java by licensing it for different uses under specific terms that differ by the nature of the use. As discussed further below, there are some uses for which one can obtain a Java license for free, but this free use applies only to certain circumstances or comes with important restrictions. For uses that do not meet the conditions of the free licenses, Oracle licenses Java and collects revenue in return. Google used these copyrighted libraries in building Android, but never obtained a license from Oracle to do so and never paid for the use of the creative product.

B. The economics of copyright

183. The Copyright Act provides that: “Copyright protection subsists ... in original works of authorship ... includ[ing] ... literary works.” 17 U.S.C. § 102(a). “Literary works” are works “expressed in words, numbers, or other verbal or numerical symbols.” *Id.* § 101. “Computer programs,” also defined in § 101, are “literary works” and copyright protected.

184. Copyright protection is founded on the principle that our society benefits greatly and continuously from the creation and dissemination of new expressive works. The social benefits of creative expression would be reduced if creators were subject to competition from other parties copying their works without restriction.²⁴⁷ Copyright thus incentivizes the creation of new works by ensuring that creators can enjoy a return on their investment without interference from infringers.²⁴⁸ Otherwise, it would be much more profitable to merely copy and sell the works of others (i.e., to free ride on their investments) than to create and sell one’s own works.²⁴⁹

²⁴⁷ See Robert Cooter & Thomas Ulen, *Law and Economics* 128 (2000); Wendy J. Gordon & Robert G. Bone, Copyright, in *II Encyclopedia of Law and Economics* 192-3 (Boudewijn Bouckaert & Gerrit De Geest eds., 2000); William M. Landes & Richard A. Posner, *An Economic Analysis of Copyright Law*, 18 *J. Legal Stud.* 326 (1989); Alfred C. Yen, *The Legacy of Feist: Consequences of the Weak Connection Between Copyright and the Economics of Public Goods*, 52 *Ohio ST. L.J.* 1343, 1365-69 (1991). See also William W. Fisher III, *Reconstructing the Fair Use Doctrine*, 101 *Harvard Law Review*, 1700 (1988).

²⁴⁸ See, e.g., *Sony Corp. v. Universal City Studios, Inc.*, 464 U.S. 417, 450 (1984) (“Even copying for noncommercial purposes may impair the copyright holder’s ability to obtain the rewards that Congress intended him to have.”). This observation is not inconsistent with any of the following: (i) some creators have other motivations in addition to profiting economically from their creations, (ii) some creators may not care about profiting at all, and (iii) even without copyright (or other IP) protections, some creation would still occur. See also Michael G. Anderson and Paul F. Brown, *The Economics Behind Copyright Fair Use: A Principled and Predictable Body of Law*, *Loyola University Chicago Law Journal* 24:2, 144-177 (1993).

²⁴⁹ Michael S. Green, *Copyrighting Facts*, *Indiana Law Journal* 78, 925-26 (2003).

185. Because society benefits not only by the creation of new works, but also by their marketing and distribution, copyright law also gives to creators the power to decide when and how to circulate works.²⁵⁰ This does not require the creator to transfer the work to end users directly; part of the purpose of copyright is to facilitate licensing of creative works for use or distribution by others. We should expect that in most cases, creators will use copyright protection such that audiences gain access, either directly from the creator or through an indirect mechanism such as licensing. By enabling the orderly licensing of copyrights and by protecting distribution rights, copyright makes possible the business of connecting works with audiences.

186. Recognizing that the “ultimate goal of copyright is to expand public knowledge and understanding . . . by giving potential creators . . . a financial incentive to create informative, intellectually enriching works for public consumption,”²⁵¹ courts apply the Copyright Act to serve these ends. Properly applied, copyright law serves society as a whole: “[W]hile authors are undoubtedly important intended beneficiaries of copyright, the ultimate, primary intended beneficiary is the public, whose access to knowledge copyright seeks to advance by providing rewards for authorship.”²⁵²

187. Economic theory has long recognized that copyright laws enhance overall social welfare and efficiency.²⁵³ Economists view copyright policy as an attempt to achieve a socially optimal balance of production and consumption of copyrighted material.²⁵⁴ Economists generally hypothesize that, in a properly functioning market for copyright protection, the overall supply of creative works should be increasing, benefitting society as a whole.²⁵⁵ Thus, protecting copyright protects not only creators, but also creativity itself.

²⁵⁰ See *id.* at 423-33 (“[T]he Copyright Act grants the copyright holder ‘exclusive’ rights to use and to authorize the use of his work in five qualified ways, including reproduction of the copyrighted work in copies.”). Also William M. Landes & Richard A. Posner (2003) *The Economic Structure of Intellectual Property Law*, Belknap Press.

²⁵¹ *Authors Guild, Inc. v. Google, Inc.*, Case No. 13-4829-cv, *12 (2d Cir. Oct. 16, 2015).

²⁵² *Id.* at *13.

²⁵³ See, e.g., William M. Landes and Richard A. Posner, *An Economic Analysis of Copyright Law*, 18 J. Leg. Stud. 325, 235-33, 344-53 (1989) (“A distinguishing characteristic of intellectual property is its ‘public good’ aspect For copyright law to promote economic efficiency, its principal legal doctrines must, at least approximately, maximize the benefits from creating additional works minus both the losses from limiting access and the costs of administering copyright protection.”).

²⁵⁴ Richard Watt, *An Empirical Analysis of the Economics of Copyright: How Valid are the Results of Studies in Developed Countries for Developing Countries?*, *The Economics of Intellectual Property* 65 (World Intellectual Property Organization, 2009), http://www.wipo.int/export/sites/www/ip-development/en/economics/pdf/wo_1012_e_ch_3.pdf.

²⁵⁵ As copyright protection increases, the creator’s rewards from producing original material also increase, leading to a greater willingness to supply such material to the market. See *id.* at 65 note 3.

188. In certain circumstances, deemed fair use, copying protected material is permissible, to the extent that it further fosters creative expression.²⁵⁶ Fair use does not devalue the underlying purpose of copyright protection. To the contrary, properly understood it supports and reinforces the goal of creating social benefit from new creative expression. Of course, fair use must be properly balanced against the primary goals of copyright as to not enable freeriding and thus destroy the carefully calibrated system of incentives in the copyright IP regime. To that end, in order for the unauthorized use of protected material to qualify as fair use, I understand that courts generally evaluate four statutory factors: (I) the purpose and character of the use, including whether such use is of a commercial nature or is for nonprofit educational purposes, (II) the nature of the copyrighted work, (III) the amount and substantiality of the portion used in relation to the copyrighted work as a whole, and (IV) the effect of the use upon the potential market for or value of the copyrighted work. (17 U.S.C. §107). The second and third of these factors in this case involve largely technical issues, and are discussed in the reports of Professors Kemerer and Schmidt. The first and fourth factors involve important economic considerations, and are discussed in this report.

VII. FAIR USE ANALYSIS

189. I understand that the focus of this matter is on whether or not Google's copying of the Java API packages constitutes what is known as a "fair use." Fair use is described in the U.S. Copyright Statute as follows:

§ 107 . Limitations on exclusive rights: Fair use

Notwithstanding the provisions of sections 106 and 106A, the fair use of a copyrighted work, including such use by reproduction in copies or phonorecords or by any other means specified by that section, for purposes such as criticism, comment, news reporting, teaching (including multiple copies for classroom use), scholarship, or research, is not an infringement of copyright. In determining whether the use made of a work in any particular case is a fair use the factors to be considered shall include—

[Factor 1] (1) the purpose and character of the use, including whether such use is of a commercial nature or is for nonprofit educational purposes;

[Factor 2] (2) the nature of the copyrighted work;

[Factor 3] (3) the amount and substantiality of the portion used in relation to the copyrighted work as a whole; and

²⁵⁶ Gordon, Wendy, Fair Use as Market Failure: A Structural and Economic Analysis of the Betamax Case and Its Predecessors, 82 Columbia Law Review 1600 (1982); William W. Fisher III, Reconstructing the Fair Use Doctrine, 101 Harvard Law Review, 1744-1788 (1988).

[Factor 4] (4) the effect of the use upon the potential market for or value of the copyrighted work.

The fact that a work is unpublished shall not itself bar a finding of fair use if such finding is made upon consideration of all the above factors.
²⁵⁷

I understand the Federal Circuit in this case has provided further guidance and detail on these fair use factors.²⁵⁸ I have read and considered this in my analysis below.

190. In the remainder of this report, I will present an analysis of those aspects of these statutory factors that bear on economic issues and considerations and thereby demand economic analysis. In particular, under Factor 1, I will address the commercial nature of Google's use of Java, and show that it was not transformative. Under Factor 4, I will describe the economically appropriate way to analyze the "potential market for or the value of the copyrighted work," and describe in some detail the harm to that market engendered by Google's unauthorized copying of Java. Finally, I will respond to those portions of Google's experts' reports where they opine about economic matters.

191. As noted above in the summary of conclusions, I find that those aspects of the statutory fair use factors that are economic in nature all point strongly toward a finding that Google's use of the Java API packages in Android is not a fair use. Under Factor 1, I find that Google's use of the Java platform is highly commercial, and not transformative because it supersedes the Java platform in the market. Under Factor 4, I find significant evidence of market harm in the form of specific lost opportunities, and broader economic substitution. In the following sections I will describe how I arrived at these conclusions.

VIII. FACTOR 1

(1) the purpose and character of the use, including whether such use is of a commercial nature or is for nonprofit educational purposes;

192. Consideration of Factor 1 requires economic analysis, because understanding the "purpose" of any action by a firm requires understanding of firm profit motives and incentives. And in assessing the degree of commerciality of a given good or service, as an economist, I consider the intent of the firm in choosing to use the copyrighted work, the magnitude of profits accruing to the firm from its use, and the ongoing competitive advantages provided by the use. All of these considerations take into account the company's business model and the competitive landscape of the markets in which it operates.

²⁵⁷ 17 U.S.C. § 107

²⁵⁸ *Oracle America, Inc. v. Google Inc.*, 750 F.3d 1339 (Fed. Cir. 2014).

193. This analysis is based on the economic concepts I have discussed throughout this report. Companies that compete in platform markets (like Google) are subject to different competitive pressures, and must consider economic forces such as network effects and scale that may not be present in other industries. Thus the analysis of commerciality must also consider how the use of the copied work protects or extends the user's business (and profits) from current and future competition. Furthermore, as discussed above, it is inherent in a platform market that users are economically interdependent, and the platform owner will frequently choose to subsidize some uses and users in pursuit of maximizing the overall value of the network. This means that superficial revenue flows can be misleading as to true sources of profit in the platform. No economist would suggest that because over-the-air television programming is given free to viewers, this means that TV stations are non-commercial or that these programs do not earn profit. Similarly, Android is not "free," but rather conforms to a multi-sided market business model in which certain users of the platform (advertisers, some developers) subsidize the activity of other users (users, OEMs, some developers, and carriers).

194. I also draw upon the economic notion of market substitution. I will explain the underlying economics that show why the substitution of Java-based Android in the many use markets for Oracle's Java platform (e.g., mobile, wearables, tablets, and many others described more fully herein) means that Google's use is not transformative.

195. Using the economic framework described above, in this section I analyze the purpose and character of Google's use of the Java API packages and find that this factor weighs against fair use. Specifically, I find Google's copying is both highly commercial and non-transformative. I also review the Factor 1 opinions offered by Google and find them unpersuasive.

A. Commercial nature of Android and its use of Java

196. Google's use of the Java API packages in Android is unmistakably commercial. First, Google's copying of the APIs was a strategic business decision driven by a profit motive. The use of the Java API packages was intended to allow Google to launch Android within a critical time window, providing a built-in base of developers and OEM/carrier ecosystem to jumpstart the growth of the Android ecosystem to more effectively compete with Apple's iOS, pre-empt other mobile phone platform competitors, and bolster Google's ability to defend its core search business in an increasingly mobile-centric market. Without this jumpstart, the Android platform would have taken much longer to develop a network of developers. It is quite possible that with such a time delay Android would never have reached platform critical mass.

197. As a result of its copying of the Java API packages and timely market entry, Google has enjoyed enormous monetary benefits from Android. Google has generated over \$40 billion in Android revenue, with Google's top executives' explaining that "Android is hugely profitable."²⁵⁹ On Google's Q3 2010 earnings call, then-CEO Eric Schmidt described the importance and profitability of Android to Google.

So in the open-source approach that means we give the software away, which is always paradoxical and people say, "How do you make money from that?" Let's start with the fact that the evidence we have that the people who use Android search twice as much as everything else. So clearly, there's more revenue associated with those searches. Another thing of course is if they're using Android systems, the revenue that we share in the search is shared with the operator but not with anybody else. So again it's more lucrative. So not only is there more searches and there's more ads but it's also more lucrative. So on that basis alone, Android is hugely profitable.²⁶⁰

198. Finally, the use of the Java API packages in Android continues to be critical to the long-term profitability and health of Google. From a competitive perspective, Android with its large developer community is an essential counterbalance to potential competitors, and is crucial in defending Google's core search audience.²⁶¹ In addition, the flexibility provided by the Java API packages means Android is well-suited to be the centerpiece of Google's expansion into a number of new markets.

1) The role of the Java API packages in Android's commercial success

199. Given Android's 83% market share today, it may be hard to imagine a time when the future of Google's mobile presence was in doubt.²⁶² However, a review of the contemporaneous competitive market context reveals that Google's use of Java in Android was motivated (in its own words) by a need to get to market immediately to avoid being "locked out."²⁶³ The intense time pressure to launch Android stemmed from a need to compete with Apple's iOS mobile ecosystem and a confluence of broader user trends toward mobile use that threatened Google's core PC search advertising business. Specifically, users were shifting from PC to mobile environments, and spending more time using mobile apps than PC

²⁵⁹ Google Inc., "Q3 2010 Earnings Call Transcript," October 14, 2010, p.10.

²⁶⁰ Google Inc., "Q3 2010 Earnings Call Transcript," October 14, 2010, p.10; Eric Schmidt's 4/24/2012 trial testimony (at Trial Tr. 1458:12-16) was: "The vast majority of Google's revenue at the time and today comes from search revenue. And so the primary reason to have something like Android is that people will do more searches, and then we'll get more money as a result. And that's how we, essentially, pay for the strategy of Android." Eric Schmidt also agreed that "the revenue that [Google] received as a result of the additional search revenue generated by Android paid for Android." Trial Tr. 1456:15-19.

²⁶¹ GOOGLE-01-00090213.

²⁶² Exhibit 3.

²⁶³ GOOGLE-00298438, at 449.

web browsers. This combination of threats—iOS, shift to mobile, and rise of mobile —made the timing of launch and developer adoption of Google’s Android platform particularly critical. Furthermore, as explained above, early entry in a platform market, such as mobile phones, is extremely important. Google saw the Java API packages as a way to launch within a short time period, quickly attract the developers who were critical to Android’s success, and speedily achieve acceptance and adoption by the wireless industry (which include OEMs and carriers) who had already widely accepted and adopted Java.²⁶⁴ In this way, there is a direct relationship between Google’s strategic business imperatives and the copying of the Java API packages.

a) Time pressure

200. As described above, Google’s core revenue generating product, search advertising, was threatened by the ever more prevalent use of mobile devices in the early 2000s. The acuteness of this threat was heightened with the introduction of Apple’s wildly successful iPhone in 2007. Below I describe the economic reasons that time-to-market was essential for competing with Apple and in the mobile ecosystem more broadly, and describe the contemporaneous statements from Google that demonstrate the urgency Google felt to launch Android.

(i) Economics of early entry and scale

201. Timing of entry is critical in platform markets because (1) such markets typically end up with only a few competitors, and (2) network effects frequently mean that an early lead can never be overcome. The number of competing platforms that a market can ultimately sustain is related to the strength of network effects, the heterogeneity of user preferences, and the cost and difficulty of “multihoming” or moving between multiple platforms.

202. The mobile platform market can sustain relatively few profitable platforms. Stronger network effects make smaller networks uncompetitive, reducing the number of platforms. On the other hand, a user base with a range of different preferences will help sustain multiple platforms.²⁶⁵ In the case of mobile, strong network effects come in the forms of users’ preference for more and better apps as well as developers’ need for more users and a bigger market.²⁶⁶ There are some heterogeneous preferences in the

²⁶⁴ TX 158 at GOOGLE-01-00025584 (“Fact...6M Java developers worldwide. Tools and documentation exist to support app development without the need to create a large developer services organization. There exist many legacy Java applications. The wireless industry has adopted Java, and the carriers require its support.”)

²⁶⁵ Farrell, Joseph, and Paul Klemperer. "Coordination and lock-in: Competition with switching costs and network effects." *Handbook of industrial organization* 3 (2007): 1967-2072.

²⁶⁶ Bresnahan, Timothy F., Jason P. Davis, and Pai-Ling Yin. "Economic value creation in mobile applications." *The Changing Frontier: Rethinking Science and Innovation Policy*. University of Chicago Press, 2014.

mobile platform market, however. For example, some users prefer Apple-branded devices and other users are more insensitive to brand, but sensitive to price. The result of these two conflicting factors is that it will not be winner-take-all, but there will only be a few platforms that can achieve the necessary scale. In this type of environment it becomes very important to enter the market early and become a dominant player.

203. The corollary of this imperative, of course, is that those firms that do enter early and achieve the necessary scale are in an unusually attractive competitive position in a platform market. Mobile platforms have followed this very pattern with very few platforms (primarily Apple and Google) reaching scale early by capturing significant consumer and developer adoption. For those firms, the consistency of their performance since gaining scale shows the strength of the network effects at work.

204. It is important to emphasize that these network effects can be very large, as they are in the case of mobile platforms. Windows (and DOS before it) during the early days of the PC industry demonstrated that the availability of applications was crucial to the adoption of the operating system by consumers. The availability of applications was in turn driven by having a critical mass of consumers using the operating system. This classic “chicken and the egg problem” is crucial to adoption of systems with network effects and provided a huge barrier to entry for any newly developed platform.²⁶⁷ Similarly, the direct and indirect network effects characterizing mobile platforms today are significant for any newly developed platform, and are important to growing and protecting mobile platform market share. It is difficult to overemphasize the importance of network effects in these cases. A mobile platform without applications, or without consumers has essentially zero value.

²⁶⁷ The “application barrier to entry” was also among the subjects of *US v. Microsoft*, an antitrust proceeding involving Microsoft’s Windows operating system. The Court in that matter held that an operating system wanting to compete would need “a large and varied enough base of compatible applications,” and “a potential rival would need to induce a very large number of ISVs [Independent Software Vendors] to write to its operating system.” In that Microsoft case, the Court identified operating systems that were unable to compete with Windows because of this applications barrier, including include BeOS, OS/2 Warp, Linux, and Mac OS. (Findings of fact from *US v. Microsoft*, paragraphs 45-51, available at <http://www.justice.gov/sites/default/files/atr/legacy/2006/04/11/iii-b.pdf>). Interestingly, at the time, Microsoft had approximately 5 million Microsoft developers (Craig Mundie, The Commercial Software Model, May 3, 2001. Available at <http://web.archive.org/web/20010505054014/http://www.microsoft.com/presspass/exec/craig/05-03sharesource.asp>), fewer than the 6 million Java developers at the time of Google’s copying of the Java API packages.

(ii) Google's expressed need to develop a mobile presence

205. As I describe above, Google was under intense time pressure to expand its mobile presence. Google's public acknowledgement of the risk of the emerging mobile usage patterns dates back to as early as 2004.²⁶⁸

If we are unable to attract and retain a substantial number of [mobile] device users to our web search services or if we are slow to develop products and technologies that are more compatible with non-PC communications devices, we will fail to capture a significant share of an increasingly important portion of the market for online services.²⁶⁹

As Google's 10-K reported at the end of 2005, "[t]he number of people who access the Internet through devices other than personal computers, including mobile telephones . . . , has increased dramatically in the past few years."²⁷⁰ The 10-K went on: "[I]f we are slow to develop products and technologies that are more compatible with non-PC communications devices, we will fail to capture a significant share of an increasingly important portion of the market for online services."²⁷¹

206. As described above, in mid-2005, Google acquired mobile platform provider Android, Inc. Andy Rubin, Senior Vice President who remained in charge of Android at Google explained the pressure he and his team were under to ship the product as quickly as possible.

"[Y]ou have a window of opportunity in smartphones You have to ship as soon as feasibly possible. I mean, you go to extraordinary lengths to ship sooner, because it's a very dynamic market. And it could shift directions at any time So my job . . . was to just do everything that I possibly could to get my solution to the market in the shortest time possible."²⁷²

²⁶⁸ Google SEC Form 10-K (2004), at 58.

²⁶⁹ Google SEC Form 10-K (2004), at 58.

²⁷⁰ TX 3215 at 65.

²⁷¹ TX 3215 at 65.

²⁷² Deposition of Andrew Rubin, April 05, 2011, 180:1-12.

207. Senior VP of Engineering and eighth Google employee Urs Hoelzle described in his deposition the “desperation” that characterized Andy Rubin as Rubin was developing the Android platform in 2006:

Q ... So your perception at the time you wrote your email on July 23rd, 2006, was that Mr. Rubin was desperate; true? A He was rushing, and I used the words "desperate" to say, gee, you're not in a -- you know, you're not planning to delay things a lot for a deep inspection, like -- which I recommended. Q You used the word "desperate. A. I totally used the word "desperate," yes.²⁷³

208. The payouts connected to the Android acquisition were contingent upon getting to market and shipping certain volumes of Android phones within a limited time period. Critically, all Milestones depended on first reaching Milestone 1, otherwise all future earn-out payments would be forfeited, as shown below in Figure 36.

Figure 36: Android Milestone Payment Timeline²⁷⁴

1.5	<u>Limitations on Milestone Payments.</u>
(a)	If Milestone 1 is not achieved pursuant to this <u>Article I</u> by the third anniversary of the Closing extended for any intervening Milestone Extension Period, all Milestone Payments shall be unearned, forfeited and retained permanently by Buyer.

Milestone 1 required developing a working phone and securing a relationship with a major carrier, as shown below in Figure 37.

²⁷³ Deposition of Urs Hoelzle, November 24, 2015, p. 254-255.

²⁷⁴ GOOGLE-00303922, at -3931.

Milestone 1

Buyer's mobile telephone handset manufacturing partner(s) shall have shipped a minimum of one functional mobile telephone using an operating system developed by the Company (a "**Company Enabled Phone**"), and Buyer shall have entered into a definitive agreement with at least one wireless carrier (which carrier must provide service to a minimum of 15 million customers) providing for the service contract related to the Company Enabled Phone. The Company Enabled Phone may not be a mere prototype but rather shall be a functional mobile telephone that, if replicated, would be suitable for use by a large number of consumer end users.

209. The remaining milestones dictated an aggressive ramp schedule, requiring shipments of 5 million, 10 million, and 50 million phones to reach the full payout of the Milestone payments (\$60,000,000).²⁷⁶ The structure of the Android purchase agreement illustrates both the importance that Google placed on launching a mobile platform, and the economic pressure Rubin and team were under to get Android to market quickly.

210. Google continued to build Android throughout 2005 and 2006, and also began outreach to OEMs and carriers to cultivate the necessary partnerships for its mobile platform. The Android team sought to fulfill Google's interest in speedy time to market and to meet its own objectives under Milestone 1 of its acquisition agreement. In late 2008 Google launched the first Android phone and thus began its methodical effort to repeat its PC search playbook – building scale, extending control, and profiting in this new arena. The timing of market entry was of paramount importance, which Google remained attuned to even as of 2008. A 2008 presentation on Android, pictured below in Figure 38 describes how Google's investment in Android was meant to ensure Google would not "get locked out!"²⁷⁷

²⁷⁵ GOOGLE-00303922, at -4000.

²⁷⁶ GOOGLE-00303922, at -3929, -4000.

²⁷⁷ GOOGLE-00298438, at 449.

Figure 38: Android 101 Presentation (2008)²⁷⁸

211. Even after the launch of Android, Google's ability to attract sufficient scale was uncertain and the company remained focused on mobile. In 2010, Henrique de Castro, then-President of Mobile, also expressed the time sensitivity of building mobile share: "if we miss the 'mobile window', we'll be out of business in 10 years."²⁷⁹

b) Essential benefits of the Java API packages

212. The substantial benefits of the Java API packages were well understood by Google and articulated repeatedly in Google's internal correspondence during the early days of Android. In this section, I review the Java API benefits, both as articulated by Google in describing its decision to copy the Java API packages, and as described by technical experts Chris Kemerer and Doug Schmidt. The benefits of the Java API packages tie directly to Google's commercial requirements, including the ability to attract a large developer community, and a strong technical base for the Android platform within the wireless industry that already widely adopted and accepted Java.

²⁷⁸ GOOGLE-00298438, at 449.

²⁷⁹ GOOGLE-23-00000049.

(i) Attracting developers

213. As I discussed above, mobile phone usage is largely driven through apps, each of which is platform-dependent (e.g., an app for the iPhone will not run on the Windows phone without separate development). Because of that, a key pillar of Google's plan to use Android to grab a foothold in the mobile industry was attracting a large developer base to create apps for its platform quickly.²⁸⁰ The Java developer community was particularly robust – numbering 6 million at the time of the Android launch. Copying the Java API packages provided Google a powerful means of accessing an app development community. They were already familiar with this easy-to-use application development framework and that familiarity enhanced their ability to quickly migrate to Android in that it made it easier for those developers to write new programs or to adapt existing ones. In sum, because of the large number of Java developers and because Java was “the #1 choice for mobile development,” the Java API packages were an obvious choice for Android.²⁸¹

214. Soon after acquiring Android, Google stated two particularly developer-centric reasons for its choice of the Java platform. (1) “Elegant [developer] tools story” and (2) “Existing pool of developers and applications.”²⁸² Google's internal emails also indicated that Android needed access to Java developers, and that the Java APIs would attract those developers to the Android platform. Several examples of these exchanges are listed below.

- “The point of the language, VM, and library effort is to provide a familiar and useful set of functionality to developers...”²⁸³
- “[Java] provides a familiar interface for developers, making it easier for a seasoned Java developer to write original code or port existing code.”²⁸⁴
- “Having [Java] familiar functionality available to developers ... is one less distraction from the bona fide benefits of what we are trying to do.”²⁸⁵

²⁸⁰ See Email from Daniel Brunton to Chris Pruett et. al., Subject: Re: Game partner intro email list and form, Jan. 14, 2010, GOOG-00111128 (showing that Google Developer Relations team tried to reach out to application developers to get on the Android platform); See also TX 238 at GOOGLE-02-00071778 (“We enable developers who are familiar with programming in Java to leverage their skills to quickly build Android apps. The APIs in Android enable developers to build extremely capable mobile apps that can rival what can be done on a desktop . . .”).

²⁸¹ GOOGLE-01-00019527.

²⁸² TX 1, p. 8. (GOOGLE-00001779)

²⁸³ GOOGLE-24-00017719.

²⁸⁴ GOOGLE-38-00127518.

²⁸⁵ GOOGLE-02-00359548.

- “Java is more accessible than C++. There are more Java programmers. There is more standardization in tools and libraries. Debugging is much simpler (especially for people who are not total rock stars—perhaps a lot of casual developers, etc).”²⁸⁶
- “And, as with our rationale for including all the rest of the java packages, the reason for including this is because it is a platform-neutral (in terms of Android look and feel) set of classes which will make for a more familiar toolbox for developers.”²⁸⁷
- “JavaOne is the largest developer conference of its kind and will bring together a very large number of developers who are very suitable for Android development. If there is any way we can hit them, it would be a good idea to try.”²⁸⁸
- “writing great apps must be simple...
...we are building a java based system: that decision is final”²⁸⁹

(ii) Technical benefits of the Java API packages

215. In addition to providing a built-in base of 6 million developers,²⁹⁰ the Java API packages enabled the Android team to quickly launch a technically stable product. The technical advantage afforded by using Java is referenced in several internal documents. For example, in an exchange between Android engineers, Senior Engineer Brian Swetland states, “java provides a nice safety net and faster app development and debuggability. (this is based on experience developing hiptop [a Java-based phone]—java saved us a pretty crazy amount of time).”²⁹¹

216. Another engineer on the Android team, Chris Desalvo colorfully explained the importance of the Java API packages to the Android platform in a 2006 email to Andy Rubin: “With talks with Sun broken off where does that leave us regarding Java class libraries? Ours are half-ass at best. We need another half of an ass.”²⁹²

217. Oracle technical expert Dr. Kemerer studied the Java API packages and found that they are significantly more “stable” than the early APIs that Google developed from scratch.²⁹³ I understand from Dr. Kemerer that the term stable as it relates to a software platform expresses how much the code base

²⁸⁶ TX 0013 (GOOGLE-01-00019511-513).

²⁸⁷ GOOGLE-24-00138208.

²⁸⁸ GOOGLE-01-00035931-933.

²⁸⁹ TX 23, p. 1 (GOOGLE-04-00055098)

²⁹⁰ GOOGLE-01-00025576. OAGOOGL0004950038.

²⁹¹ TX 0013 (GOOGLE-01-00019511-513).

²⁹² TX 215 (GOOGLE-01-00081881).

²⁹³ Expert Report of Chris Kemerer, January 8, 2016. P. 33-35

changes over time. Fewer changes mean more stable and easier to use API packages, which developers appreciate because it reduces the amount of new material they have to learn in order to successfully write applications. Stability therefore promotes developer efficiency, and as such more rapid development and application deployment. As Dr. Kemerer explains, stability is beneficial to developers because it makes a platform easier to work with, and therefore more attractive.²⁹⁴ In his report, Dr. Kemerer concludes that the stability of the 37 copied Java API packages contributed to the significant growth of Android.²⁹⁵

2) Android revenues

218. As a result of Google copying the Java API packages to meet the commercial goal of quickly attracting a developer community and entering the mobile ecosystem at the critical point in time, Android has enjoyed great commercial success. This is evidenced by the significant revenues and profits Google has earned from the Android platform, as well as numerous Google documents and statements extolling the success and value of Android.

219. The commercial potential and success of Android (and mobile more broadly) was discussed often within Google. In a 2010 letter to the Board of Directors, Eric Schmidt writes, “[t]he opportunity in mobile is so large it’s breathtaking—our mobile business more than doubled in the last year.”²⁹⁶ He later described Android’s adoption and progress as “amazing by any standard” with “huge implications for Google,” adding that “it looks as to me as though Android is well past escape velocity at every level.”²⁹⁷

220. Another strategy document, entitled the “Mobile Display Ads Manifesto,” similarly describes the massive commercial opportunity resulting from the combination of Android, Google’s mobile ad network, and its ad serving products.

We’re sitting on one of the biggest commercial opportunities in the world...Publishers are moving en masse to phones and tablets, and ads will be one of the primary ways they will support their apps and content. Advertisers want to reach users wherever they are, and users are spending more and more time on tablets and phones. All the stars are aligned, and we’re already on track to be a \$1B (that’s \$1,000,000,000 or one thousand million dollars) run rate by end of 2011. But we’re just getting started.²⁹⁸

²⁹⁴ Expert Report of Chris Kemerer, January 8, 2016. P. 39

²⁹⁵ Expert Report of Chris Kemerer, January 8, 2016. P. 39

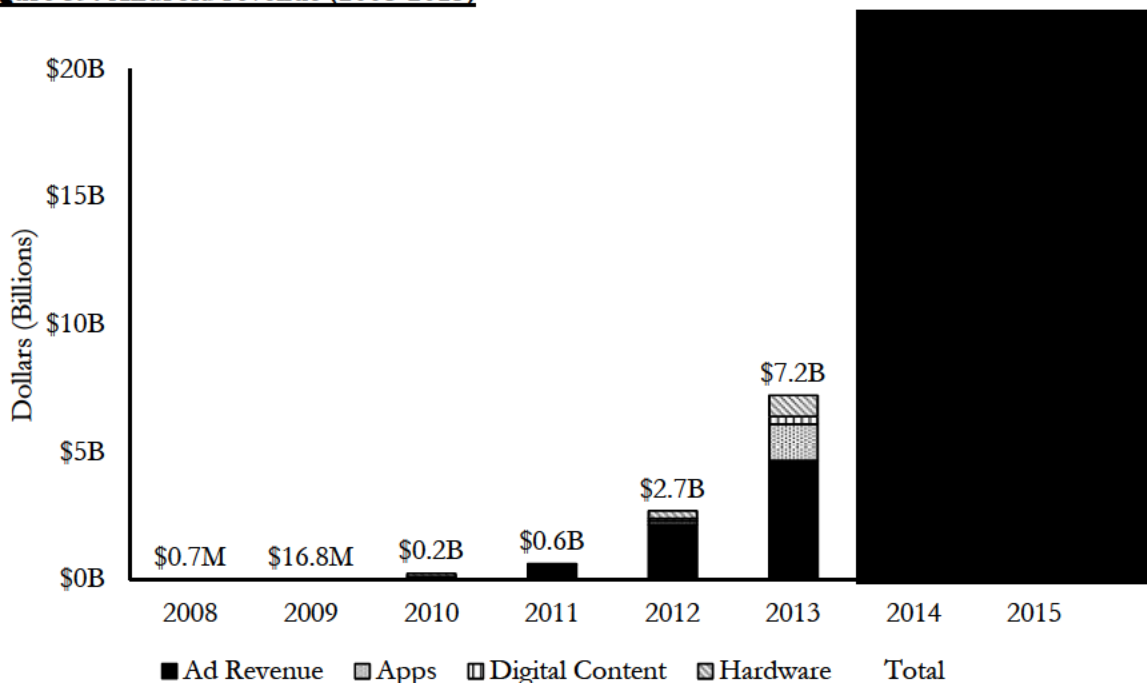
²⁹⁶ GOOGLE-26-00025769.

²⁹⁷ GOOGLE-26-00025769.

²⁹⁸ GOOG-00273854, at GOOG-00273873.

221. Google makes money from the Android platform in four ways: ads served on Android devices, app sales,²⁹⁹ digital content sales and hardware sales. Each of these revenue streams is shown in Figure 39 below. From 2008 to 2015, Android generated [REDACTED] dollars in revenue and approximately [REDACTED] profits.³⁰⁰ Figure 39 below shows the Android revenue from 2008 to 2015.

Figure 39: Android revenue (2008-2015)³⁰¹



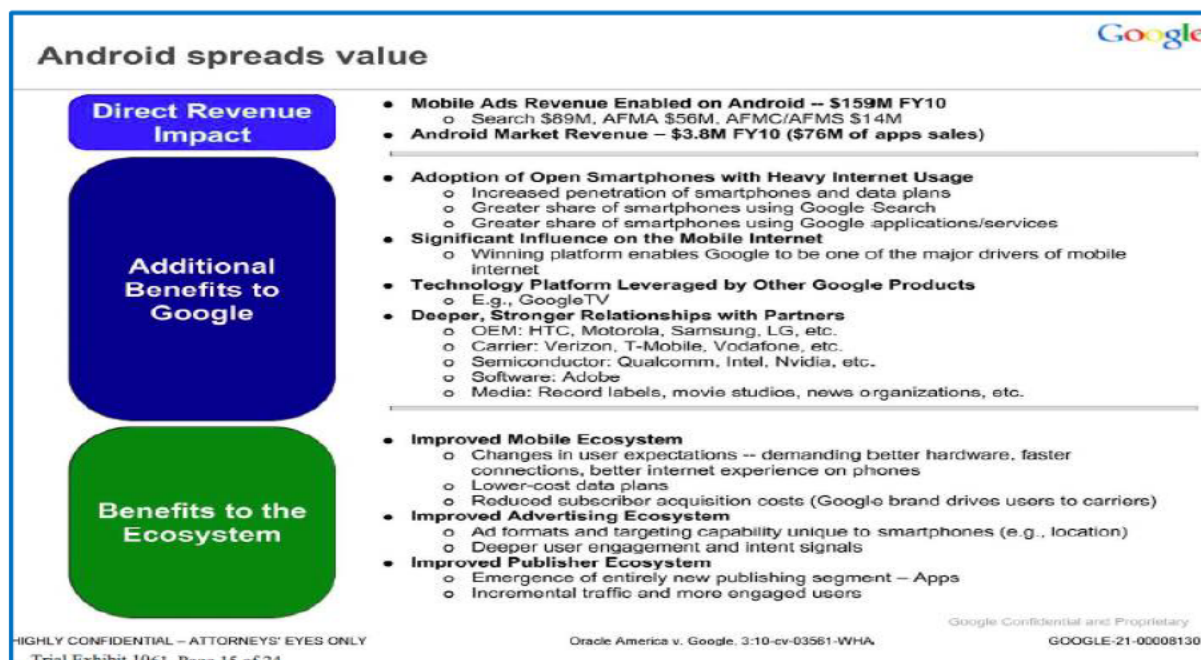
222. Figure 40, which is from a 2010 executive committee quarterly review, describes myriad financial and other benefits Google's business generates from Android.³⁰²

²⁹⁹ In 2014, Google reported that it earned [REDACTED] in revenue, not including ad revenue, from the Android platform. This was a [REDACTED] over 2013 App Revenue, and a [REDACTED] compound annual growth rate from 2009. GOOG-00103813; GOOGLE-77-00053555; GOOGLE-01-00053552.

³⁰⁰ GOOGLE-00303725 at 739; GOOGLE-01-00053552 at 556; GOOGLE-77-00053555 at 562; GOOG-00103813; GOOG-0002386; Google 2011 Form 10-K, p. 30 and 33; Google 2014 Form 10-K, p. 23 and 26; Exhibit 9; Keystone Analysis.

³⁰¹ GOOGLE-00303725 at 739; GOOGLE-01-00053552 at 556; GOOGLE-77-00053555 at 562; GOOG-00103813, See Exhibit 9.

³⁰² GOOGLE-21-00006051.

Figure 40: Operating Committee Quarterly Review – Description of Android Benefits (2010)³⁰³

223. Google readily promoted Android’s role in ensuring its continued presence in mobile phone search and in driving revenue. On Google’s Q2 2010 earnings call, Google’s then-Senior Vice President of Product Management Jonathan Rosenberg answered a question about Android’s “real installed-base revenue opportunity” as follows:

I think the most important, the most obvious thing to think about from our perspective is what's the most popular app on these devices. The most popular app is a browser. And what do people do with the browser on these devices? They search an order of magnitude more than they have on any previous type of smartphones, which they'd had in years past. So the combination of people browsing on these smartphones connected on very, very fast networks and searching on them is basically the formula around how Google makes –how Google succeeds.³⁰⁴

Earlier in the same call, Google’s Chief Financial Officer Mr. Pichette noted, “underpinning our growth [in mobile] is the success of the Android platform itself...[a]nd it creates an even larger base of data-centric smartphone users.”³⁰⁵

³⁰³ Trial Exhibit 1061 (GOOGLE-21-00006051).

³⁰⁴ Google, Inc. Q2, 2010 Earnings Call, Thursday, July 15, 2010.

³⁰⁵ Google, Inc. Q2, 2010 Earnings Call, Thursday, July 15, 2010.

a) Android ad revenue

224. Android's ad revenue is by far its most significant revenue stream. Google realized a total of \$29.0 billion in Ad Revenue from Android devices between 2008 and 2015.³⁰⁶

(i) Ad monetization strategy

225. Generating Ad Revenue has been an important part of Google's Android strategy from the beginning. A 2009 Google internal presentation explains that "Android drives revenue through search ads – we enable a full web browser which can render desktop web pages . . . which means we can serve desktop ads."³⁰⁷ Former Google CEO Eric Schmidt's testimony confirms this focus, "[t]he vast majority of Google's revenue at the time and today comes from search revenue. And so the primary reason to have something like Android is that people will do more searches, and then we'll get more money as a result. And that's how we, we essentially, pay for the strategy of Android."³⁰⁸ Similarly, Tim Lindholm, a Google software engineer, wrote in a 2005 email that, with respect to Android, "Google's goal in this would be to create more mobile page views, from more compelling content, which will create more ad views. It's making a bigger, tastier pie."³⁰⁹

226. Google well-understood the particular value of search on mobile devices and the opportunities for monetization on Android. A 2009 Operating Committee Q1 2009 Quarterly Review presentation echoed this theme, stating "Search + Android = Huge."³¹⁰ According to this presentation, "[n]early 100% of our users have searched in the last 30 days. . . . 70% of all searches are initiated from Android search framework, rather than Google.com website" and the Search widget and browser search box drove 80% of Android revenue.³¹¹

227. As I describe above, Google's platform strategy monetizes services provided to consumers or partners by collecting data and selling advertising. Google executives confirm that Android follows this

³⁰⁶ GOOGLE-00303725; GOOGLE-01-00053552; GOOGLE-77-00053555; GOOG-00132625; GOOG-00022386; Exhibit 9.

³⁰⁷ GOOGLE-22-00060007.

³⁰⁸ Trial Transcript 1458:12-16. Eric Schmidt also agreed that "the revenue that [Google] received as a result of the additional search revenue generated by Android paid for Android." *Id.* 1456:15-19.

³⁰⁹ GOOGLE-12-00000115; GOOGLE-14-00042244 at 248.

³¹⁰ Advertising was also an explicit part of Google's licensing negotiations with Sun. In 2006, Google discussed the possibility of a co-development partnership with Sun under which Java technology would become an open-source part of the Android platform and which would include a negotiable share of revenue from "platform-enabled mobile ads." GOOGLE-00303725 at 731.

³¹¹ GOOGLE-00303725 at 731; 739.

same playbook. When asked the question, “[w]ould it be accurate to say that the model Google has for Android is to make it available for free and to make money from advertising and the value-add services that go on top of the Android platform?” Eric Schmidt responded, “[t]hat’s a component of our strategy, yes, and – yes.”³¹²

228. Many witnesses confirm the importance of ad revenue to Google’s Android strategy. Daniel Morrill, Google’s Android Compatibility & Open Source Program Manager, testified that Google’s plan for generating profits from Open Source Android was that “the more people use the internet, the more they do searches, and the more they do searches, the more likely they are to use Google to do so and therefore create revenue for Google through advertising.”^{313 314} Similarly, Google’s Senior Director of Product Management Dipchand Nishar, testified that Google would benefit from Android because “[t]o the extent that the users of that platform would also adopt Google search and advertising . . . there would be monetary benefit to Google, if its advertising products are being used.”^{315 316}

229. Google also viewed aspects of its Android ecosystem strategy as valuable to Google’s long-term strategic goals. Nishar explained that, “[b]ecause of the goodwill being generated by having an open, free platform, as I said before, the carriers and OEMs, it would generate goodwill towards Google, and they would be more disposed to using Google’s platform for search and advertising, yes.”³¹⁷

(ii) Ad revenue success and growth

230. Google’s Android ad revenue strategy has been important to Google’s financial success. A Q4 2010 presentation to the Google Operating Committee reports that “Android created a hardware and services ecosystem worth over \$43B a year. . . . Our apps and ads services have made this [] possible, and

³¹² Deposition of Eric Schmidt, August 23, 2011, p. 11.

³¹³ Deposition of Daniel Morrill, July 7, 2011, pp. 72 – 73.

³¹⁴ When asked whether “Google expected to profit from Android by increasing the number of people who were doing searches on Google’s search engine?” Mr. Morrill answered “that’s what we were told.” Deposition of Mr. Daniel Morrill, July 7, 2011, pp. 72 – 73.

³¹⁵ Deposition of Dipchand Nishar, September 8, 2011, p. 96.

³¹⁶ Similarly, Aditya Agarwal testified that Google “generate[s] revenue from ads shown on Google Search on Android devices. . . . we make money off of ads on Google Search on an Android device. We make [money] off of ads revenues on Google Search on Android devices and from a very small share of money that we get from paid applications on Android Market.” Deposition of Aditya Agarwal, April 8, 2011, pp. 24 – 27.

³¹⁷ Deposition of Dipchand Nishar, September 8, 2011, p. 96.

work to protect our position.”³¹⁸ That same presentation predicted that Android Ad Revenue would increase from \$115M in 2010 to \$1.263B in 2013.³¹⁹

231. Google’s strategy to generate Android ad revenue has been extremely successful. Google replicated its proven playbook of building scale in a market and then monetizing its huge user base through advertising and sales of digital content (apps, music, etc.). Google’s strategy was already gaining traction by the end of 2010.³²⁰ Figure 41 below from a Q4 2010 presentation on Android to Google’s Operating Committee shows Android’s 2010 Profit and Loss statement.

Figure 41: Android Profit & Loss Statement (2010)³²¹

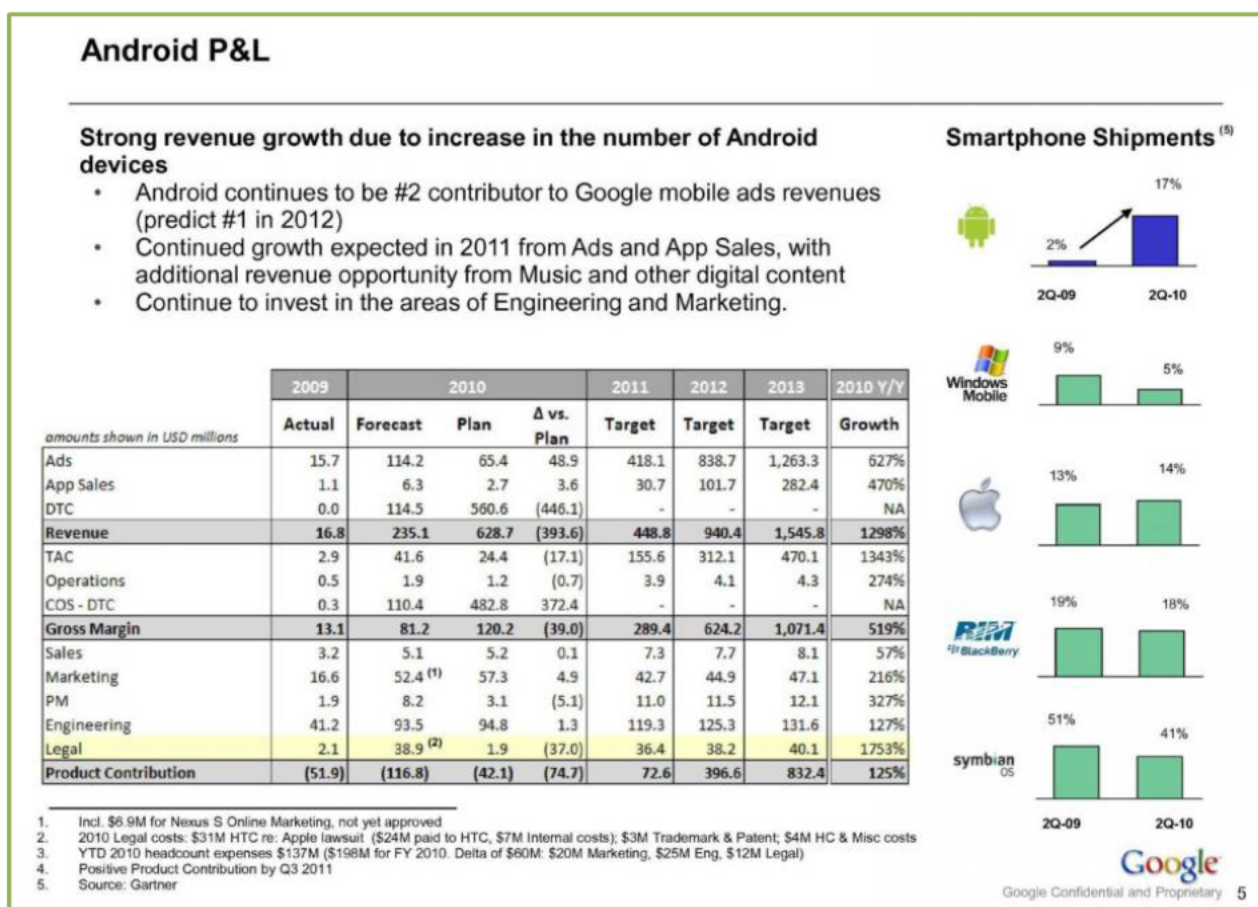


Figure 41 above also shows that in 2010, Android’s ad revenue significantly outpaced Google’s plan.

³¹⁸ GOOGLE-01-00053552 at 566.

³¹⁹ GOOGLE-01-00053552 at 585. Actual Android ad revenue far exceeded these estimates – 2013 totals were \$4.7B. See Exhibit 9.

³²⁰ GOOGLE-01-00053552, at -3556.

³²¹ GOOGLE-01-00053552, at -3556.

232. In the next quarter (Q1 2011), Google's Operating Committee noted that Android annual revenue was higher than all other high-end phone platforms in the United States and Japan.³²² Google also increased its Android Ad Revenue projections from the Q4 2010 presentation. For example, its projection of 2013 revenue increased from \$1.263B to \$1.715B.³²³

233. In the Q2 2011 Earnings Call, Google executive Nikesh Arora emphasized the continued growth in Android ad revenues, "our Mobile business continues to be another area of robust growth. The number which Larry just shared of 550,000 Android, that and the success of smartphones and general Mobile Data devices around the world is acting as an accelerator for our mobile advertising effort."³²⁴ In the Q3 2011 Earnings Call, Arora summarized the growing import of Android to Google's revenue, "Many advertisers have greatly increased the size and frequency of their mobile campaigns. Mobile is becoming a must-have."³²⁵ That same year, Piper Jaffray released an analysis of Google's Android business entitled "Android likely a \$1 Billion Business Next Year for Google." Consistent with the title, the firm's view of Android's revenue generation prospects was positive, "As consumer time spent on mobile devices continues to increase, we expect the [Average Revenue Per User] on mobile could eventually reach those of Google's online businesses."³²⁶

234. By 2012, Google's internal reporting, as shown in Figure 42 below, was showing trailing 12-month revenue of \$1.65B, a sizable increase over projections.

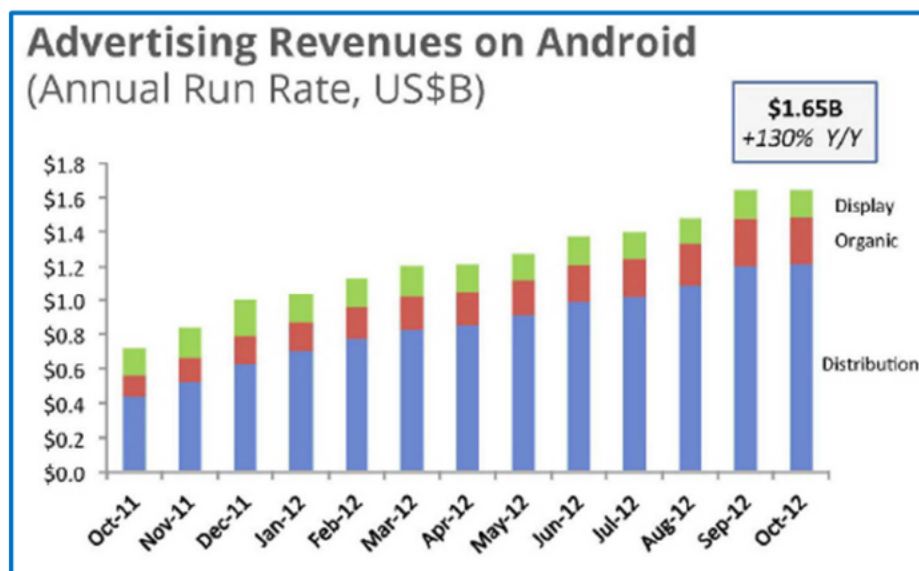
³²² GOOGLE-77-00053555.

³²³ GOOGLE-77-00053555.

³²⁴ Google Inc. Q2 2011 Earnings Call Transcript, p. 6.

³²⁵ In the Q3 2011 Earnings Call, Google executive Nikesh Arora "Let's turn to mobile advertising. Larry mentioned \$2.5 billion as a run rate. Our revenue growth continues to accelerate even in Mobile, driven primarily by mobile search. This growth, obviously, is driven both by the underlying expansion of Android devices and of tablets, as well as stellar performance of our sales teams who are working closely with our customers to help them craft compelling mobile advertising solutions." Google Management Discusses Q3 2011 Results – Earnings Call Transcript, October 13, 2011, p. 6.

³²⁶ Piper Jaffray Report, "Android likely a \$1 Billion Business Next Year for Google," February 8, 2011.

Figure 42: Android Advertising Revenues – Annual Run Rate (2012) ³²⁷

About six months later, in a March 31, 2013, “Android Weekly Metrics Summary,” Google reported that Android search revenue was at about [REDACTED] far exceeding its earlier projections.³²⁸ Tracking Google’s internal reporting of Android ad revenue reveals that Google enjoys significant and growing financial benefits as the Android platform expands.

235. As recently as 2015, an internal Google presentation reports continued growth of Android. As Figure 43 from that presentation shows, between January 2014 and April 2015, Android ad revenue increased from [REDACTED] to [REDACTED] per month.³²⁹

³²⁷ GOOG-00132218.

³²⁸ GOOG-00290796. In November 2013, Google estimated that the incremental gross margin was [REDACTED] per phone and [REDACTED] per tablet. As I discuss below, this increased profit measurement estimate increased in later years. GOOG-00186877.

³²⁹ GOOG-00130338.

Figure 43: Android Monthly Search Revenue (2014-2015)³³⁰

Figure 43 above also measures “ARPU” on the right-side Y-Axis. ARPU stands for average revenue per user and is an important companion metric because it measures growth within Google’s ad monetization engine while controlling for the overall growth of its network.

236. In April 2015, Forbes wrote an article about Google ad revenue noting that “[t]he mobile search ads division is the second largest division for Google and makes up approximately 34% of its total value, according to our model. Google, with 90% market share, dominates the mobile search engine market. One of the key reasons for this dominance is its flagship Android OS, which has witnessed excellent adoption and penetration in the smartphone space.”³³¹

b) Google Play Store

237. Google’s next largest source of Android revenue comes from direct sales to Android users through its Google Play Store.³³² Today’s Android Google Play Store launched as the “Android Market” in 2008. Its role on the Android platform remains the same—to provide Android users with a source for

³³⁰ GOOG-00130338.

³³¹ “Google Earnings Preview: Will Advertising Revenue Grow?,” Forbes, April 22, 2015. <http://www.forbes.com/sites/greatspeculations/2015/04/22/google-earnings-preview-will-advertising-revenue-grow/>.

³³² “Google Play store” and “Android Market” are used interchangeably here.

the download of apps and digital content such as music, movies and e-books.³³³ Google's 2013 10-K describes the Google Play Store as an "entirely cloud-based, digital entertainment store with more than a million apps and games plus millions of songs and books and thousands of movies that our users can find, enjoy and share on their computer, phone or tablet."³³⁴

238. Google generates significant Android revenue directly from the Google Play Store. Jon Gold, Android's Senior Financial Director testified that Google Play is a "commercial opportunity for Android" and that Google "make[s] money" from it.³³⁵ From 2012-2013, Google's "Other Revenue" increased by \$2.6 billion and Google attributed the increase "to growth of our digital content products, such as apps, music, and movies on the Google Play store."³³⁶ Similarly, Google's "Other Revenue" increased another \$2.0 billion between 2013 and 2014.³³⁷ Again, Google explained that this was "primarily due to growth of our sales of digital content products, such as apps, music, and movies on the Google Play store."³³⁸

239. Google generates Android revenue through its Google Play Store in two ways: (1) sales of app downloads (including in-app purchases), and (2) sales of downloaded digital entertainment content. I discuss each in turn.

(i) Android revenue from app downloads

240. Google views both app availability and app sales to Android users through the Google Play Store as important elements of Android platform monetization.³³⁹ Since its launch, there have been over 100 billion app downloads by Android users through the Google Play Store.³⁴⁰ During the same period, Android's Google Play Store has generated a total of \$7.97 billion in revenue from app downloads and in-app purchases.³⁴¹

³³³ <http://www.cnet.com/news/google-reboots-android-market-launches-google-play/>.

³³⁴ Google 2013 Form 10-K, p. 3.

³³⁵ Deposition of Jon Gold, January 29, 2016 at 414:20-415:4.

³³⁶ Google 2013 Form 10-K, p. 24.

³³⁷ Google 2014 Form 10-K, p. 24.

³³⁸ Google 2014 Form 10-K, p. 24.

³³⁹ GOOGLE-00302808. To ensure the success of the Google Play store, Google believed it would need a "strong network of partners distributing Market in devices" and therefore agreed to share 70% of revenues generated by app sales with developers.

³⁴⁰ Google Inc (GOOG) CEO Discusses Q2 2013 Results – Earnings Call Transcript, July 18, 2013, <http://seekingalpha.com/article/1557292-google-inc-goog-ceo-discusses-q2-2013-resuts-earnings-call-transcript>; Google Play on more than 50 billion installs in the past year, over one billion active users, May 28, 2015, <http://www.androidcentral.com/google-play-sees-more-50-billion-installs-past-year-over-one-billion-active-users>.

³⁴¹ GOOGLE-01-00053552 at 556; GOOGLE-77-00053555 at 562; GOOG-00103813.

241. Google Play Store app downloads grew quickly after its launch. During the first quarter of 2009, Google reported that there were 2,700 apps and 43 million app downloads.³⁴² 85 percent of Android users had downloaded at least one app.³⁴³ By the end of 2010, there were 33,000 paid apps and 86,000 free apps available to download from the Google Play store.³⁴⁴ This number increased to 117,500 free apps and 74,500 paid apps by March 2011.³⁴⁵

242. Google viewed app availability as important to the health of its mobile ecosystem and to Google's partners. In an internal document, Google explained why the volume of apps is important to its strategy, saying “[w]e created the first app store for Android and it got critical mass quickly. The store now has value and partners want access to it because of the number of apps available.”³⁴⁶ Apps play a role in winning user loyalty to the platform.³⁴⁷ Analysts have also noted the importance of Google Play revenues. A 2015 Trefis report summarized as follows:

The Google phone division makes up 10.5% of its estimated value. Considering the growth of Google’s Android platform and the growth in smartphone adoption globally, Google’s Play store is fast becoming a vital cog for Google’s growth in the coming years. Google Play is also connecting developers and content providers with more than 1 billion people on Android devices around the world. Developers are building thriving businesses in this platform, and in February, Google announced that over the past 12 months (FY 2014), it paid more than \$7 billion to developers.³⁴⁸

(ii) Android revenue from digital content

243. Android’s Google Play Store also generates revenue through sales of digital content such as - books, music, videos, and magazines.

244. Android’s digital content offerings in its Google Play Store have evolved and revenue has grown considerably since its launch. In Q4 2010, Android introduced downloadable music and “Other Digital

³⁴² GOOGLE-00303725 at 745.

³⁴³ GOOGLE-00303725 at 745.

³⁴⁴ GOOGLE-00395207.

³⁴⁵ GOOGLE-77-00053555.

³⁴⁶ GOOGLE-01-00053552 .

³⁴⁷ Google Launches Android Market, http://www.techhive.com/article/152613/google_android_ships.html; Do App Stores Impact Wireless Device Sales?, October 18, 2010, https://www.strategyanalytics.com/strategy-analytics/blogs/media-services/media-services-ux/media-and-services-ux/2010/10/18/do-app-stores-impact-wireless-device-sales-#.Vh0dY_IVhBc.

³⁴⁸ Trefis Analyst Report, “Google Earnings: Profits Soars as the Company Reins in Cost,” July 17, 2015.

Content.”³⁴⁹ In 2012, Google reported a \$189 million annual run rate for digital content downloads.³⁵⁰ In 2015, an internal Google presentation reported that Digital Content generated \$298 million in revenue in 2013, ██████ in revenue in 2014, and ██████ million in revenue in 2015.³⁵¹ Overall, from 2011 and to 2015, Google has generated ██████ in revenue from sales of Android-based digital content sales.³⁵²

245. Android’s revenue from digital content sales is expected to continue to grow. A 2015 Forbes article reported that “[c]onsidering the growth of Google’s Android platform and the growth in smartphones adoption across the globe, Google’s Play store is fast becoming a vital cog for Google’s growth in the coming years. . . . We believe that Google will be able to leverage popularity of Android platform to boost its revenues. Currently, we forecast digital content revenue to grow to \$8.51 billion by the end of our forecast period.”³⁵³

c) Google Hardware Android revenue³⁵⁴

246. In 2010, Google released the Nexus, an Android platform mobile device for which Google received direct sales revenue. Since then, Google has released an array of Nexus-branded Android platform mobile devices including phones, tablets, watches, and accessories in partnership with various OEMs including Samsung, HTC, LG, and Motorola. In aggregate, Google’s sales of hardware total approximately \$1.9 billion since 2010.³⁵⁵

d) Overall Android growth

247. As one would expect, Android device shipments have experienced similarly rapid growth. Figure 44 below shows the number of Android phones and tablets shipped in each year.

³⁴⁹ At the time, Google expected these downloads to generate between \$1.5 and \$3 billion in revenue by 2013. GOOGLE-01-00053552 at 567.

³⁵⁰ GOOG-00132218 at 223.

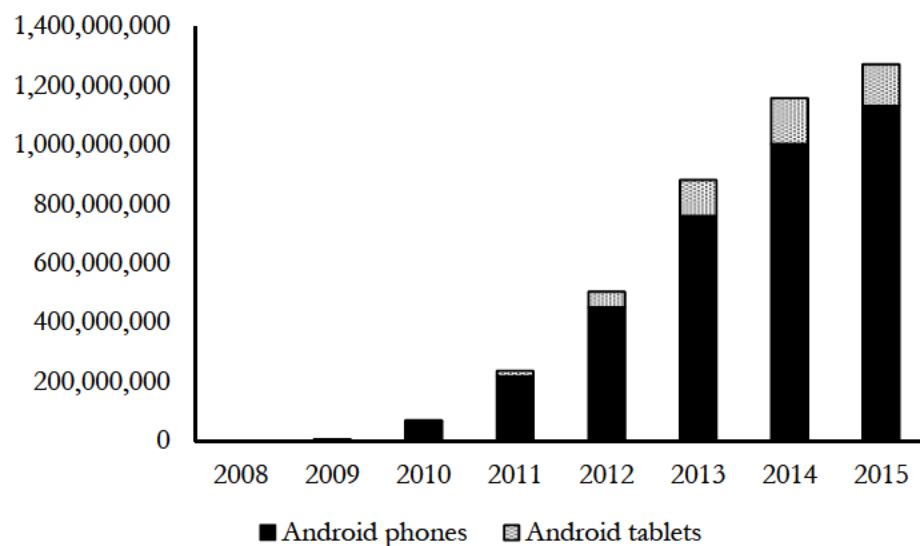
³⁵¹ GOOG-00130338 at 342.

³⁵² GOOG-00103813.

³⁵³ “Google Earnings Preview: Will Advertising Revenue Grow?,” Forbes, April 22, 2015. <http://www.forbes.com/sites/greatspeculations/2015/04/22/google-earnings-preview-will-advertising-revenue-grow/>.

³⁵⁴ The Java API packages get loaded onto Google hardware; and so Google commercially exploits Oracle’s copyrighted works in hardware as well. (Expert report of Robert Zeidman, Jan. 8, 2016).

³⁵⁵ Deposition of Jon Gold, December 11, 2015, p. 70; GOOGLE-77-00053555; GOOG-00103813.

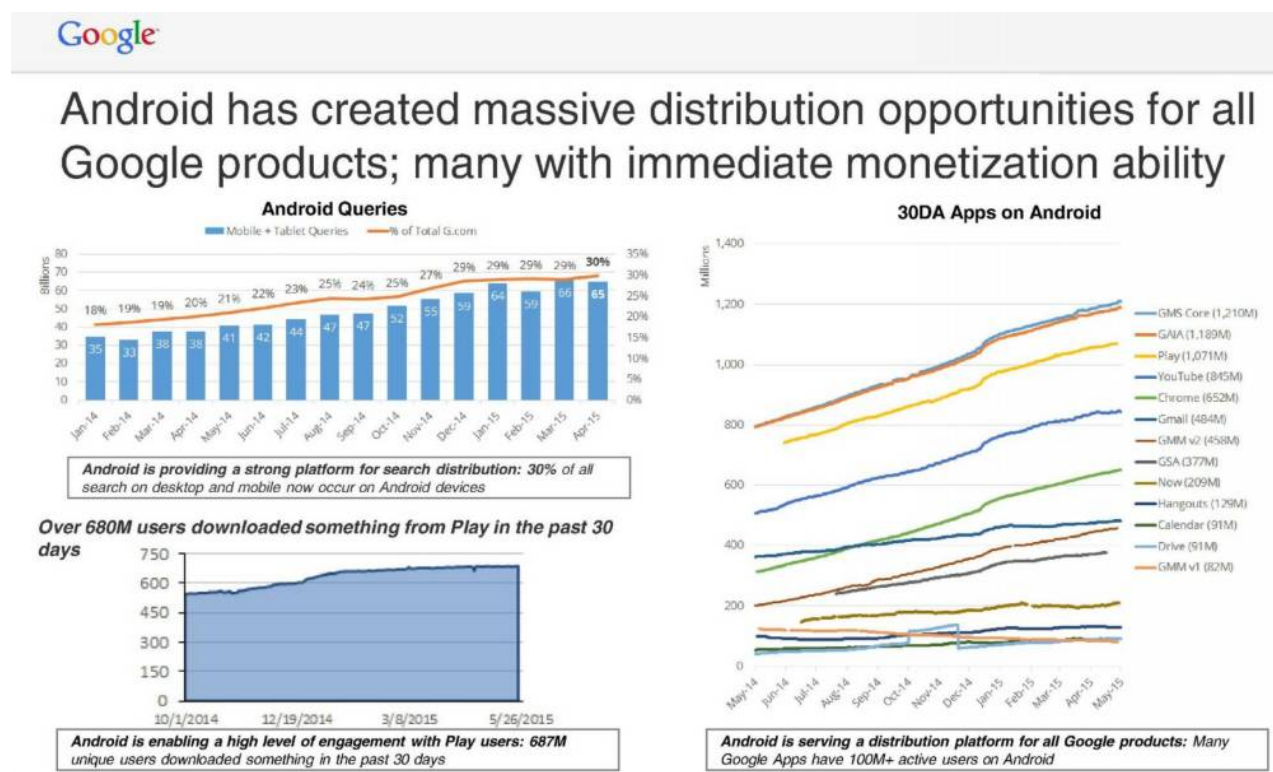
Figure 44: Android shipments – phone and tablet (2008-2015)³⁵⁶

248. This massive growth of Android devices has resulted in Android enjoying an 83% share in the smartphone market today.³⁵⁷ Android’s huge user base is extremely valuable to Google as a distribution channel for the products it directly monetizes. In 2013, Google formed a dedicated team to “improve the interface between the Android and Ads team” that Andy Rubin announced will make Google “lots of money.”³⁵⁸ Figure 45 below from an internal presentation for Google executives shows the way the Android finance team perceives this distribution value.

³⁵⁶ Exhibit 3.

³⁵⁷ Exhibit 3.

³⁵⁸ GOOG-00570823, at -0823. *See also* GOOG-00112576.

Figure 45: Introduction to Android presentation (2015)³⁵⁹

249. In the same presentation, Google’s finance team estimated the value of an Android user. As of 2015, Google estimates the lifetime value to Google of a single Android user as approximately [REDACTED] in profits (assuming repeat device purchasing).³⁶⁰ There were about 1.4 billion Android users as of September 2015.³⁶¹

250. The importance of Android in leveraging Google’s multiple revenue streams is brought home by Google’s requiring OEMs who ship Android phones pursuant to the Mobile Application Distribution Agreements to bundle Google apps such as Google Maps and YouTube with the Android operating system in such a way that the phone user cannot de-install those apps.³⁶² The Google apps are proprietary and are not licensed as part of the open source platform (called “AOSP”). The only reason for Google to impose the no de-install requirement is to protect revenue opportunities associated with those apps.

³⁵⁹ GOOG-00130338 at 346.

³⁶⁰ GOOG-00130338 at GOOG-00130343.

³⁶¹ Lomas, Natasha. “Android Now Has 1.4 Billion 30-Day Active Users Globally.” *Techcrunch*

³⁶² Hill, Brandon. Google to Require as Many as 20 of its Apps to be Preinstalled on Android Devices. *Daily Tech* (Sept. 26, 2014).

<http://www.dailytech.com/Google+to+Require+as+Many+as+20+of+Its+Apps+to+be+Preinstalled+on+Android+Devices/article36620.htm>.

According to another Google executive responsible for its Android hardware partnerships, none of the OEMs use just the AOSP software.³⁶³

251. Google executives have acknowledged the profitability of Android on many occasions. For example, Google CEO Eric Schmidt noted in Google's Q3 2010 earnings call that "Android is hugely profitable," and that "Android is well past anything that I had ever hoped for and looks like it's on its way to be a huge, huge, success."³⁶⁴

252. Two years later, on its Q3 2012 Earnings Call, Google again touted the robustness of Android's success, saying, "mobile search queries and mobile commerce are growing dramatically across the world"³⁶⁵ and "[w]e continue to see great momentum in our mobile advertising business and opportunities with brand advertisers."³⁶⁶ In that call, Larry Page said:

This time last year, I announced that our run-rate for mobile advertising hit \$2.5 billion. That seemed like a pretty big number even for Google. But now we have built up additional mobile revenue from users paying for content and apps in Google Play. Including these new sources grossed up, I can announce our new run-rate for mobile is now over \$8 billion. That's quite a business.³⁶⁷

253. In sum, there is overwhelming and consistent evidence of Android's robust performance in service of Google's revenue and strategic goals across four primary revenue streams: ads, Google Play Store, digital content and hardware sales.

3) Continued strategic importance of Android to Google

254. Google's Java-based Android platform is a significant source of Google's revenue and provides Google with a critical distribution channel for a range of Google search and other advertising services. Android protects and reinforces Google's scale advantages, network effects and control as a dominant advertising platform.

255. The high-level strategic importance of Android was highlighted in a May 2015 presentation prepared to introduce incoming Chief Financial Officer Ruth Porat to the Android business. The Android

³⁶³ Deposition of Hiroshi Lockheimer, December 8, 2015, p. 171-172:10-18.

³⁶⁴ Google Q3 2010 earnings transcript at p. 10.

³⁶⁵ Google Q3 2012 earnings transcript at p. 2.

³⁶⁶ Rachel King, Google's Q1 Earnings Results Also Plagued by Strong Dollar, ZD Net (Apr. 23, 2015), <http://www.zdnet.com/article/google-q1-2015-earnings-revenue-by-the-numbers/>.

³⁶⁷ Google Q3 2012 earnings transcript at p. 2.

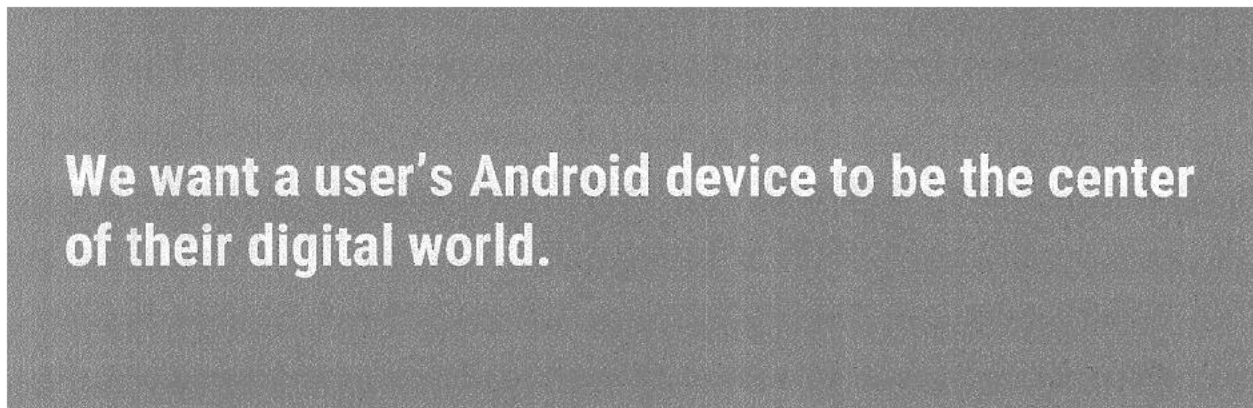
finance team summarized the key financial value propositions of the Android platform with a series of projections (that turned out to under-estimate performance) excerpted below:³⁶⁸

- Android Ecosystem is central to Google's success over the next 3-5 years
 - In 2015, [REDACTED] of revenue will occur on the Android Platform -- [REDACTED] of direct revenue from Play and Hardware Sales; with an additional [REDACTED] of revenue from Ads on Android.
 - The [Android] platform is critical for distribution of all of our products, driving activations and usage at relatively low incremental cost.
 - ...
- With the overarching goal of building a sustainable platform to act as a delivery mechanism for Google software and services, the team has been successful executing against ambitious new programs of varying scale.³⁶⁹

a) Android as a Gateway

256. One of the ways in which Google protects its scale is by ensuring users can access Google services across a broad range of devices. Android sits at the center of this strategy. For example, a Google internal presentation, entitled "Android: the center of all your devices," includes a simple slide illustrating how Google views the role of Android, as shown in Figure 46 below.³⁷⁰

Figure 46: Android Presentation (April 2015)³⁷¹



257. Competition among platform providers increasingly requires companies to cater to users' desires for a single, integrated platform across mobile devices, smart television, wearables, and other connected

³⁶⁸ Deposition of Jonathan Gold, December 11, 2015. p. 177:10-24; GOOG-00130338, at -0339.

³⁶⁹ GOOG-00130338, at -0339.

³⁷⁰ GOOG-0025-1037

³⁷¹ GOOG-0025-1037, at GOOG-0025-1039

home devices.³⁷² The mobile device serves as the key gateway to owning the suite of user experiences. A recent story referred to this strategic imperative, “A host of hardware and software companies have been vying for the coveted “gateway” spot—the main device or application with which users watch their video content, whether it’s on the TV or the smartphone.”³⁷³

258. Google Senior Director of Android and Chrome OS partnerships, James Kolotouros, described the importance of expanding into new Android markets in his deposition:

Q: Why is the television market important to Google?

THE WITNESS: [E]cosystems are expanding to include additional form factors, and at the same time as competitors are looking to expand into other segments, it is my belief that, for Android to be successful, not just being in phones and tablets is important.³⁷⁴

Later in his deposition Mr. Kolotouros explained Google’s sales strategy in servicing large, multi-product OEM accounts.

A: What were your responsibilities in working with Thomas [business development employee for Android TV]

A: ...Coordinating across OEMs who might have been not just Android TV partners, but [also] Android smartphone or tablet manufacturers.

Q: What does that coordination involve?

A: Primarily making sure that we’re doing our best to work well with the OEM and work efficiently with them so that...they have an efficient interaction with Google and ... have better prospects for success.

...

If an OEM is already a smartphone or tablet licensee of Google applications, a simple MADA or a simple amendment is all that is needed to expand their connection to Android via the TV program.³⁷⁵

259. The statements above illustrate that Google depends upon Android for its success in mobile search and its overall ecosystem health, revenue and profits.

³⁷² Deposition of Felix Lin, December 18, 2015. P. 249:15-251:6.

³⁷³ Thibeault, Jason. Why Apple, Microsoft, or Amazon Will Win the the Living Room, Streaming Media (Jan. 2016), <http://www.streamingmedia.com/Articles/Editorial/Featured-Articles/Why-Apple-Microsoft-or-Amazon-Will-Win-the-the-Living-Room-108553.aspx>.

³⁷⁴ Deposition of James Kolotouros, January 26, 2016. P. 71:21-25, 72:1-19.

³⁷⁵ Deposition of James Kolotouros, January 26, 2016. P. 75:10-14.

b) Importance of scale and necessity of competitive counterbalance

260. My analysis of Factor 1 seeks to understand the degree of commerciality of Google's copying of the Java API packages. As I discuss throughout this report, that is best understood through the lens of Google's platform business, which requires, among other things, mobile search scale. In this section, I describe the substantial investment Google makes for mobile search traffic on platforms it does not control like iOS and others. I also discuss how Android's search traffic serves as a counterbalance in its dealings with non-Android distribution partners. These analyses reveal the long-term strategic and the short-term financial benefits afforded to Google by the Android platform, and demonstrate the high degree of commerciality involved in Google's copying of the Java API packages.

261. The scale that Google needed for its mobile ecosystem requires significant investment in the form of revenue sharing with OEMs and carriers. As I explained above, the reason why Google enters into such seemingly costly distribution arrangements is the need for scale. In PC search, Google initially built scale through distribution and syndication partnerships. Once it achieved success, it then worked to reduce dependence on partners by promoting consumer use of its owned and operated sites and services (*e.g.*, the Google portal, YouTube) over use of sites controlled by its partners. This "Google-owned" traffic is preferable because it means Google does not have to share the associated ad revenue with any partners. The economic incentives at play in the mobile advertising space are similar. Scale and timing are important, particularly in the early stages of development of the market for a network good. Google needed to expand its presence in mobile quickly to avoid being locked out, so Google built scale through revenue-sharing agreements with its partners.

262. Figure 47 below from an internal Google presentation on mobile shows the range of OEMs and carriers to which Google made revenue sharing payments for distribution.

Figure 47: Google Payments to Mobile Ecosystem Partners (2011)³⁷⁶

Search: Mobile Distribution TAC % primarily impacted by [REDACTED] and Carriers

	Q3'11		\$M				% of Total		
	Partner	OEM/CARRIER	<u>Dist+Org</u> Rev	Dist Rev	TAC	TAC%	<u>Dist+Org</u> Rev	Dist Rev	TAC
1	[REDACTED]								
2									
3									
4									
5									
6									
7									
8									
9									
10									
11									
12									
13									
14									
15									

Google has publicly proclaimed that Google's strategy for Android is a "volume" play, one of "mass penetration." This characterization by former Google CEO Eric Schmidt was further articulated in a 2014 article:

The fact of the matter is you can make a small market share with a lot of profits, or you can make the same amount of money with a much larger market share, and lesser profits. We go for volume in our strategies.

263. Android provides a key counterbalance to partners and competitors in its platform markets. Over the course of a decade of PC growth, the Google playbook that I describe above put Google in a position where it had significant control of its ecosystem through its owned and operated sites. Mobile presented Google with a new set of partners—OEMs, carriers, chipmakers, developers—any of whom could have challenged Google's control.

³⁷⁶ GOOG-00248717, at -8739.

264. I understand that Google provided a chart listing the historical mobile search revenue that Google generated through its distribution arrangements, with “non-Android” mobile (and in one case, mobile and PC) search distribution partners.³⁷⁷ Though the identities of the partners are obscured (called “Partners A-F”), these search revenue sharing payments provide an important view of the amount that Google invests in building scale on mobile devices, and the amount of revenue that investment yields.³⁷⁸ Finally, the magnitude of Google’s TAC payments provides further evidence of the incentives that Google had to gain greater share of mobile search through Android. As I discuss above, gaining control provides a platform, among other things, and a better ability to price optimally.

265. The information provided includes search revenue and revenue sharing percentage by year, for each listed partner.³⁷⁹ From this information, I calculated total TAC payments to each partner by year. In Table 6 below, I show the magnitude of revenue and payments over time for Partners B-F.³⁸⁰ Only mobile revenue is indicated for each of these Partners.³⁸¹

Table 6: Google TAC Payments to Partners B – F (in millions)³⁸²

	Partner B			Partner C			Partner D			Partner E			Partner F		
Year	%	Rev	TAC	%	Rev	TAC	%	Rev	TAC	%	Rev	TAC	%	Rev	TAC
2006															
2007															
2008															
2009															
2010															
2011															
2012															
2013															
2014															
2015															

As is clear in Table 6 above, Google invests substantially to secure mobile search distribution on platforms other than Android. And that investment returns significant revenues. This shows the importance of securing distribution and the benefits of achieving scale.

³⁷⁷ Dkt. 1436.

³⁷⁸ Dkt. 1436.

³⁷⁹ Dkt. 1436.

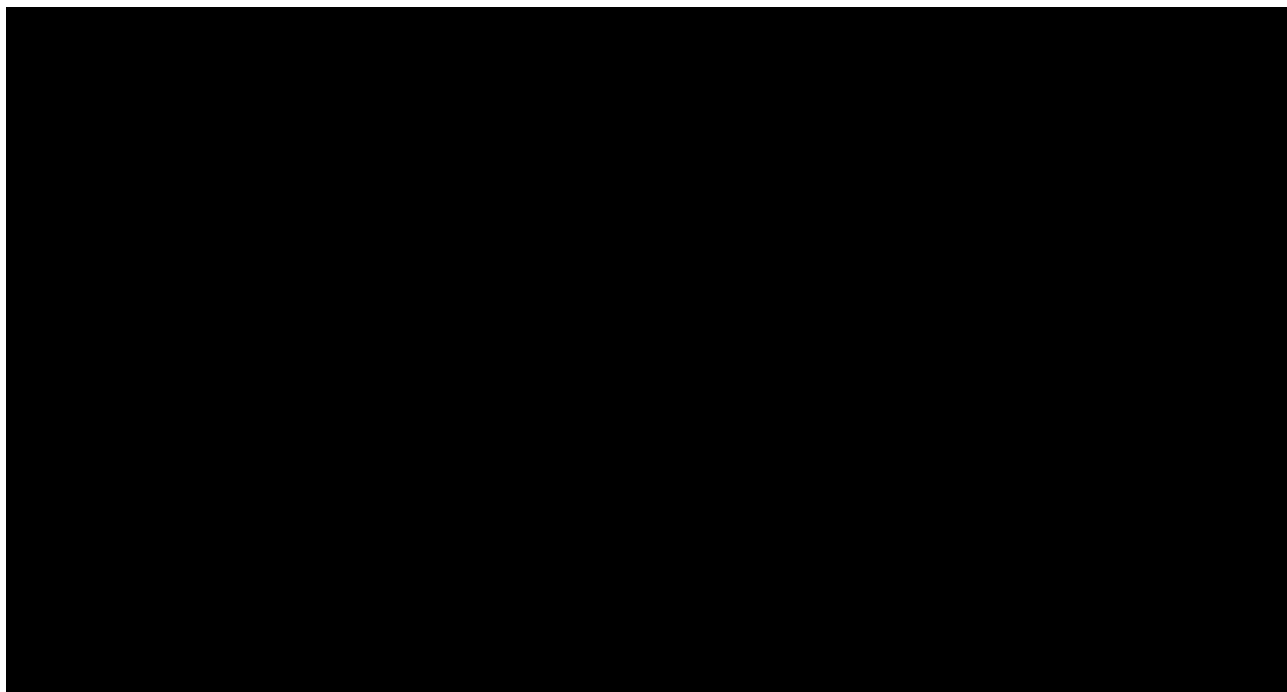
³⁸⁰ Dkt. 1436.

³⁸¹ Dkt. 1436.

³⁸² Dkt. 1436.

266. The data for Partner A is particularly instructive because the partner has both a PC and mobile search distribution agreement with Google. By analyzing the trend in TAC payments for mobile versus PC search, I am able to infer the relative importance of the two categories. Figure 48 below shows the TAC that Google has paid to “Partner A” since 2005.

Figure 48: Google TAC payments to “Partner A”³⁸³



267. The chart above illustrates two important facts for understanding the monetary and strategic value that Java-based Android provides to Google. First, I observe that the amount of search revenue (and TAC payments) for Partner A [REDACTED], suggesting the key area of growth for Google’s advertising business is mobile. It is in Google’s economic interest to avoid reliance on distribution partners in the growing mobile market, and Android provides a mechanism for reducing reliance on non-Android partners whom Google does not control. Second, I see that the overall magnitude of the payments, nearly [REDACTED] for mobile TAC in 2015 alone [REDACTED].³⁸⁴

268. Google’s most significant risk to its mobile success has always been Apple. The Android platform provided Google the best chance to counterbalance competing ecosystems and grow its own platform that it would control. At the time Google was developing its mobile strategy built around

³⁸³ Dkt. 1436.

³⁸⁴ Dkt. 1436.

Android, Google temporarily avoided lockout by securing an important partnership with Apple. However, Google remained highly focused on building mobile share through Android over which it had more control. As I explain above, since 2007, Google has provided search services to Apple for its iOS devices. This arrangement with Apple comes with significant revenue sharing costs and more importantly, creates a major strategic vulnerability for Google because of the amount of search, app traffic and dollars flowing to Google through Apple's iOS devices. Android provides an important counterweight to the power of iOS mobile traffic by reducing Google's TAC payments, the threat of a sudden loss in search volume and the disintermediation of other Google services. In this section, I describe how Android alleviates each of these competitive disadvantages below.

269. Google has paid Apple billions of dollars in both PC and mobile ad revenue sharing payments (TAC) pursuant to a longstanding search distribution partnership agreement.³⁸⁵ The level of TAC paid to Apple, both in dollar amount and percentage of revenue shared is discussed in a number of Google internal documents. For example, a record of meeting notes from a Google Mobile meeting in January 2012 reports the "2011 Apple TAC payment was [REDACTED], of which Mobile was [REDACTED])."³⁸⁶ Another presentation entitled, "Impact of Mobile on Google.com Growth & Margins" states, "We expect to pay [REDACTED] to Apple on Mobile in 2014. A [REDACTED]t reduction [in TAC %] would save [REDACTED]."³⁸⁷ Android Finance Director Jonathan Gold confirmed the significance of Google's payments to Apple:

Q: [W]hat is the percentage of that revenue that is paid out to Apple?

A: It is -- it's roughly [REDACTED].³⁸⁸

A: In the lifetime of payments to Apple, it's certainly been more than [REDACTED].

Q: In fiscal year 2014, do you believe that that revenue share totaled more than a [REDACTED]?

A: Sitting here today, I don't know the specifics, but that's the ballpark.³⁸⁹

270. Google's willingness to make payments of this size is another indication of the value it places on dominance of the search market, and the importance of mobile phones in maintaining that dominance.

³⁸⁵ GOOG-00273770, at -774.

³⁸⁶ GOOG-00248660.

³⁸⁷ GOOG-00273770, at -774.

³⁸⁸ Deposition of Jonathan Gold, December 11, 2015, p. 17.

³⁸⁹ Deposition of Jonathan Gold, December 11, 2015, p. 14.

Recall that in Google's distribution arrangements, Google pays a partner (such as Apple) to be the default search engine for various search access points (such as the Safari browser on an iPhone). User searches from these access points return both Google search results and Google search ads, and Google pays partners a portion of the revenue derived from the ads.

271. From an economic perspective, as Android grows, Google will have stronger negotiating power and greater likelihood of reducing revenue share percentage. For example, even as Android mobile share has surpassed that of iOS in terms of device shipments by the second quarter of 2010, but Google is still highly dependent on Apple - in a manner that continues to be concerning for Google.³⁹⁰

272. The revenue derived from iOS users is higher than that of Android users, a topic which is discussed often at the highest levels within Google. While the total dollar amount of revenue that Google has paid to Apple is substantial, the more important metric to consider is the percentage of revenue that Google is sharing pursuant to the agreement. Google's TAC payments to Apple represent [REDACTED] of gross revenue from mobile search revenue from iOS. The [REDACTED] is a higher percentage of shared revenue than most partners and creates significant pressure on Google's margin.³⁹¹ Figure 49 below is from a finance presentation on Google's mobile presence, and the impact on Google's overall business.

³⁹⁰ Ed Burnette, *Android Sales Surge, Surpass iPhone (Updated)*, ZD Net (Aug. 3, 2010), <http://www.zdnet.com/article/android-sales-surge-surpass-iphone-updated>.

³⁹¹ Dkt. 1436.

Figure 49: Google Presentation on Margin Pressure from Mobile Growth (April 2012)³⁹²

Mobile growth puts pressure on Google.com margins because the structure of our mobile revenue sources is not ideal...



1) We do **not** get enough mobile traffic organically

2) We are **heavily reliant on** [REDACTED]

3) On average, [REDACTED]

Drove TAC % up

Drove TAC % down

	2011 Google.com Desktop		2011 Google.com Mobile		
	% of Desktop Revenue	TAC %	% of Mobile Revenue	TAC %	% of Rev chg from 2010
Organic revenues	70%	0%	23%	0%	9%
Distribution:	[REDACTED]				
Distribution: All other partners					
Total Google.com	94%	5%	6%	25%	4%

Potential Abatement Measures



Google Confidential and Proprietary

HIGHLY CONFIDENTIAL - ATTORNEYS' EYES ONLY

GOOG-00273772

The presentation in Figure 49 succinctly summarizes many strategic considerations relating to Android and its impact on Google's commercial business. First, the slide plainly states, "We are heavily reliant on [REDACTED]." As an economic matter, being heavily reliant on a direct competitor creates a strategic disadvantage that threatens a company's ability to generate profits over the long term.

273. In addition to the frequent discussions of Android's direct impact on Google profits, the broader strategic considerations relating to this vulnerability are discussed often within Google. For example, the excerpts below are from a list of important Objectives and Key Results ("OKRs") for Google executives in which those executives discuss "Project Soy," Google's effort to mitigate the risk Google faced from the potential expiration of its agreement with Apple and its desire to continue to earn lucrative revenue

³⁹² GOOG-00273770, at 772.

and competitive scale through provision of search on the iOS platform.³⁹³ In sum, Google's relationship with Apple's iOS exhibits a number of characteristics that demonstrate the benefits Google enjoys from its Android ecosystem: (1) avoidance of significant amounts of the high costs it pays to have its search product carried on a competing platform and ecosystem, (2) removal of the risk to Google of displacement of its services including search, and (3) the ability to fully exploit the search and other advertising entry points it enjoys in Android. Further, each of these risks of payment, displacement or lack of exploitation is moderated by the presence of Android's success as counterbalance.

c) Control

274. I described above the economic incentive for Google to retain control of a platform. Control of the Android platform serves both to reduce the risk to Google of lockout or intermediation (by Apple and other competitors) and to optimize for profit. Two recent examples demonstrate the significant benefits of control, and the value that Google receives from being able to control the Android platform.

(i) Ad Blockers

275. The direct benefits of control afforded Google by Android can be seen in the recent case of mobile ad blocking applications.

276. Ad blockers are programs that, as the name suggests, prevent advertising from being displayed on a browser or mobile device. Ad blockers pose a substantial threat to Google's advertising-based business model and are noted as a Risk Factor in Google 10Ks.³⁹⁴ In mid-2015, Apple announced its intention to allow "ad blocking" software in its Apple App Store. Previously ad blockers had been primarily limited to PC browsers, and technical reasons prevented ad blockers in the mobile space.

277. Apple's announcement spurred numerous headlines about the general threat to the online advertising industry, and Google specifically. For example, Wired reported, "Ad blocking plays into Apple's competition with Google in another way, too ... By incorporating its own ad block capabilities in Safari, Apple could be kneecapping its archrival while innocently claiming its just trying to improve the user experience."³⁹⁵ Apple's decision to allow ad blockers on iOS devices hurts Google because Google

³⁹³ GOOG-00130302.

³⁹⁴ "Technologies have been developed that can block the display of our ads and that provide tools to users to opt out of our advertising products. Most of our revenues are derived from fees paid to us by advertisers in connection with the display of ads on web pages for our users. As a result, such technologies and tools could adversely affect our operating results." Google 10-K 2013.

³⁹⁵ Greenberg, Julia, *Apple's Support of Ad Blocking May Upend How the Web Works*, Wired, June 12, 2015 (<http://www.wired.com/2015/06/apples-support-ad-blocking-will-upend-web-works/>)

derives the majority of its revenue from advertising, and much of that comes from iOS mobile ads. Apple makes most of its money from hardware and likely had strategic reasons for blessing ad blockers on mobile devices. Put simply, the decision helps Apple, and hurts Google.

278. In contrast, Google has been able to choose a strategy better aligned with its own economic interests on the Android platform. Google has removed ad blocking software from the Google Play Store on several occasions, particularly on popular apps.³⁹⁶

Google this week reportedly pulled one mobile ad blocker from the Google Play store and prevented another from being updated. The moves come on the heels of Samsung's announcement this week that it was opening up its mobile Web browser to ad blockers. Adblock Fast, which was one of the first blockers to take advantage of Samsung's largesse, reportedly was tossed from Google Play.³⁹⁷

279. While Google has been circumspect about the reason for the ban, the decision makes sense from an economic perspective. Android provides Google with the ability to control a large portion of the mobile industry, and eliminating threats to its advertising business is important to Google's commercial strategy.

(ii) Google Maps

280. The risks of a lack of control can be observed through the case of Apple's introduction of its own mapping app on the iOS platform.

281. When the iPhone launched in 2007, Google Maps was the default map app. Several years later, Apple launched its own map program, Apple Maps. Though Apple Maps was largely rejected by users upon launch and faced serious public scrutiny, Apple used its position of control to steadily mature its product and gain share of iOS users for Apple Maps. Specifically, Apple replaced Google Maps as the default program on iOS devices, requiring users who wanted to use Google Maps to navigate to the app in the App Store, download, and install it. For a period of time, most users still chose to use this manual process to obtain Google Maps, and adoption of Apple Maps remained low. However, recently use of Apple Maps surpassed that of Google Maps on iOS devices. The impact on Google of lack of control on Android is reduced search traffic from Google Maps on iOS devices.

³⁹⁶ Wladimir Palant *Adblock Plus for Android removed from Google Play store* Adblock Plus March 14, 2013 (<https://adblockplus.org/blog/adblock-plus-for-android-removed-from-google-play-store>); Nick Statt *Google removes Samsung's first Android ad blocker from the Play Store* Yahoo News February 3, 2016 (<http://news.yahoo.com/google-removes-samsungs-first-android-180226264.html>).

³⁹⁷ John Mello ... *Google Strikes Back at Ad Blockers* E-Commerce Times, February 6, 2016 (<http://www.ecommercetimes.com/story/83081.html>)

282. In sum, the economic interests of Google and its competitors are not always aligned, and in fact are often directly at odds. Relying on a competitor for a large source of a key input such as mobile traffic is risky, and Android helps Google reduce its risk, which is a clear strategic, competitive, and ultimately commercial benefit.

4) Commerciality overall

283. Based on the above analysis, I conclude that Android is a strategically crucial, highly successful commercial product, that Google's copying of the Java API packages was explicitly directed at those commercial objectives, and was in fact a major contributor to their achievement.

B. Analysis of transformative use

1) Legal background on "transformative" use

284. I understand that in assessing how Factor 1 weighs in a fair use analysis, I should consider to what extent the use of the copied work is "transformative" of the original work. I further understand that the term transformative is a term of art in copyright law, which has been defined by the U.S. Supreme Court as follows:

The central purpose of this investigation is to see . . . whether the new work merely 'supersede[s] the objects' of the original creation [citations omitted] or instead adds something new, with a further purpose or different character, altering the first with new expression, meaning, or message; it asks, in other words, whether and to what extent the new work is 'transformative.'³⁹⁸

Based on this definition, from an economic perspective, the test of whether a use is transformative depends heavily on whether or not the use of the copied work supersedes the market for the original work. In this sense, the notion of superseding is essentially the same as substitution in the economic sense.

285. I reviewed an additional case which further articulates this test of whether or not a use is transformative, *Wall Data Inc. v. L.A. Cnty. Sheriff's Dep't*. The decision reads "[a] use is considered transformative only where a defendant changes a plaintiff's copyrighted work or uses the plaintiff's copyrighted work in a different context such that the plaintiff's work is transformed into a new

³⁹⁸ *Campbell v. Acuff-Rose Music, Inc.*, 510 U.S. 569, 579, 114 S.Ct. 1164, 127 L.Ed.2d 500 (1994).

creation.”³⁹⁹ The Court further notes, “In cases where ‘use is for the same intrinsic purpose as [the copyright holder’s] . . . such use seriously weakens a claimed fair use.’”⁴⁰⁰

286. I understand the defendant’s use in the *Wall Data* case was found to be non-transformative because the defendant “created exact copies of [plaintiff’s] software . . . then put those copies to the identical purpose as the original software.”⁴⁰¹ As I will describe, from an economic and market perspective, Google copied the Java API packages for the same purpose as Oracle originally intended for the Java platform, a purpose the Java platform served in a series of prior and subsequent device contexts. (I understand that Oracle’s technical experts have concluded that Google used the Java API packages for the same technical purposes as well).⁴⁰² Further, Google used this copied material in the same markets as those in which Oracle was licensing its Java platform, harming Oracle’s ability to extract value from its copyrighted work. This is clear evidence of market substitution. I will now explain the economic concepts that underlie market substitution and market harm, which to an economist are closely related.

2) Economic analysis of substitution

287. Substitution is a basic concept in economics. At the simplest level, two goods or services are substitutes if having more of one good or service reduces the marginal value to the user of the other good or service. For example, if I have several pencils in my briefcase, the value to me of getting a pen is lower than if I do not have anything to write with at all. While not exactly the same, pens and pencils both provide the ability to write and draw, and are thus substitutes which compete for my consumption. This is known as marginal substitution, because I may decide to keep both pens and pencils. But in either case, the value of one of the goods is dependent on the degree to which the other is present, and vice versa.

288. In some cases substitutability operates at an “all or nothing” level rather than on the margin. While many people may use both pens and pencils, most people wish to own and use only a single mobile phone. So if I have an Android phone and am given an iPhone, I will likely either not use the iPhone or else use it to completely replace the Android phone. This is known as “non-marginal” substitution.

289. Substitutability typically operates non-marginally with network goods (as discussed above). For example, VHS and Betamax video recorders were substitutes as methods for recording audiovisual media content. Both VHS and Betamax have attributes of a network good, *i.e.*, the more people who use VHS

³⁹⁹ *Wall Data Inc. v. L.A. Cnty. Sheriff’s Dep’t*, 447 F.3d 769, 778 (9th Cir. 2006).

⁴⁰⁰ *Id.* (quoting *Worldwide Church of God v. Philadelphia Church of God, Inc.*, 227 F.3d 1110, 1117 (9th Cir. 2000))

⁴⁰¹ *Wall Data Inc. v. Los Angeles County Sheriff’s Dept.*, 447 F.3d 769, 778 (2006).

⁴⁰² Expert Report of Doug Schmidt, Jan. 8, 2016. Expert Report of Chris Kemerer, Jan. 8, 2016.

the greater the value of VHS recorders, and the same for Betamax. The formats competed for individual user adoption, as it was highly unlikely a single user would adopt both formats. This meant that substitution between the two formats operated at the level of the entire network, not just at the level of the marginal value to a user of one or the other. In the end, as the number of VHS users increased and VHS gained large share, the Betamax network reached a point of being nonviable and faded away entirely.

290. Analysis of substitutability is made more complex when considering goods and services that are not sold to users directly but are incorporated as components in other goods or services. For example, GE and Rolls Royce do not compete to sell aircraft engines to air travel customers; they compete to sell them to airplane manufacturers. And a given aircraft has a fixed number of engines, which typically are all of the same design. Hence an airplane manufacturer makes an all-or-nothing decision as to whether to buy engines for a given airplane model from GE, from Rolls Royce, from someone else, or conceivably to build its own engine.

291. In this case, the market in which I seek to understand substitution is the market for the Java platform. Google copied and incorporated the Java platform (specifically, the Java API packages) into Android. This use substituted for use of the Java platform in product categories where Oracle potentially and actually licensed or licenses Java. I understand that a given device (mobile phone, e-reader, tablet, smart television) typically only contains a single application platform such as Java or Java-based Android. Because of this, Google's use of the Java API packages in its devices creates non-marginal substitution. In other words, end-customers, such as mobile OEMs and app developers, will choose one or the other, but not both. As I explained above, non-marginal substitution creates a bigger impact on the market for the superseded work, because the work is completely replaced.

292. Substitution in the market for the Java application platform is also exacerbated by the fact that Java is a network good, and the relevant network extends beyond any single device. Each device or user employing the Java platform makes the entire network more valuable. Thus, Google's incorporation of unlicensed Java in the Android platform, and the growth of Android instead of the Java platform, further harms the overall value of the Java ecosystem, and the potential markets in which Java would otherwise be used.

a) Impact of platform economics on substitution

293. In addition to the economic substitution concepts described above, the interplay of platform economics and substitution is important. Specifically, it is important to contrast Google's platform

business model with Oracle's licensing business model to better understand the competitive dynamics affecting the level of substitution in the market for the Java software platform.

(i) Oracle's business model for the Java platform

294. As I describe above, the Java commercial licensing model is designed to balance two goals: wide ranging developer and ecosystem adoption and revenue generation. Oracle employs a strategy based on the idea of network effects and platform economics to achieve these goals simultaneously. As a network good, the value of Java increases as participation from both developers and device manufacturers increases. A large and active developer community building Java-based software is attractive to hardware manufacturers because users are more likely to buy devices for which a rich selection of apps exists. To incentivize developer adoption, Oracle offers Java licensing to application developers to develop apps free of charge.⁴⁰³

295. Application developers want their programs to be widely adopted, and in turn want to develop for platforms or devices that have broad distribution. They know from Oracle's "write once, run anywhere" commitment to compatibility that Java-enabled hardware will run their programs.⁴⁰⁴

296. To generate revenue, Oracle offers royalty-bearing and other monetary licenses to the Java platform to OEMs and other platform partners which employ the Java platform on devices such as phones, dedicated servers, e-readers, and many other kinds of devices.⁴⁰⁵ Such licensees are incentivized to take a commercial Java license because of the benefits the licensed provides, including – software updates, indemnification, branding, support, and a compatible base for a rich set of user-facing apps.⁴⁰⁶

(ii) Impact on Oracle of Google's model for monetizing Android

297. As I described above, Google has a very successful platform business model in that it generates the majority of its revenue from advertising, thereby subsidizing the use of its software and services by platform participants such as users, developers, OEMs and carriers (in the case of mobile).

298. The difference in Android's and the Java platform's monetization models accelerates the substitution effects I discussed above. This is because from an economic perspective, for a customer

⁴⁰³ *Java SE Downloads*, Oracle, <http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/java/javase/downloads/index-jsp-138363.html#javasejdk> (Last accessed Feb. 8, 2016).

⁴⁰⁴ Nick Langley, *Write Once, Run Anywhere?*, Computer Weekly, May 2002 <http://www.computerweekly.com/feature/Write-once-run-anywhere>.

⁴⁰⁵ OAGOOGL0006739115 at -9125.

⁴⁰⁶ OAGOOGL02000644741.

facing a decision between two products that offer the same benefits (here, an application platform that can run on many kinds of devices and with a robust ecosystem of developers and partners as discussed), with a significant price difference, the rational choice is to select the lower-priced option. In this case, the lower-priced option is Java-based Android. This of course made the competition between Android and the Java platform much more challenging for Oracle.

299. Safra Catz, co-CEO and former President of Oracle, described Oracle's attempts to license in markets where Java-based Android had entered and thereby provided an alternative to the Java platform, "It's pretty hard to compete with free."⁴⁰⁷ Additionally, Mike Ringhofer, Director of Worldwide Java Sales, described several instances in which Google's use harmed Java licensing opportunities.

We sell less royalties because it's hard to compete against Java when Java has been taken and used as a core component of Android and is given to customers for free.

We're -- definitely compete for deals. When we compete we combat or always deal with price sensitivity because we're not free. We obviously have a royalty. And I believe that because of price sensitivity, and they already had -- if they had already in essence Java via Android, then they didn't see a purpose of paying Oracle.⁴⁰⁸

Over time we have absolutely tried to sell and continued to license Java on these phones. It's a very price-sensitive market. They're very concerned with the bill of materials and we cost more than free. And it has not been a choice customers are willing to pay for when they get the same thing for free.⁴⁰⁹

In practice, Android's offering to device manufacturers and other business partners is often even more attractive than "free," as it comes with a revenue sharing subsidy.

b) Substitution of Android for Java licensing

300. The economic concept of market substitution is closely related to the question of whether a use is transformative. A use is not transformative if it is a market substitute or takes away the original audience for a work.


301. In the present case, the non-transformative nature of the use and the market harm go hand in hand. Concrete examples of market harm, detailed below, also provide clear examples of market

⁴⁰⁷ Transcript of Jury Trial Proceeding Appearances Vol. 10, April 27, 2012, p. 22.

⁴⁰⁸ Deposition of Michael Ringhofer, (Dec. 02, 2015), at p. 39.

⁴⁰⁹ Deposition of Michael Ringhofer, (Dec. 02, 2015), at p. 78.

substitution, i.e., instances where Android replaced Java or was used in a product or good that Java could have been used in were it not for Android. For example,

- 
- Amazon used Java for its first e-Reader, the Kindle, but replaced Java with Android when it launched the Kindle Fire;⁴¹¹
- Cisco used Java on its VoIP business phones for years, but recently replaced Java with Android on its high-end and low-end VoIP phones, leaving Java on only a small segment of mid-range, legacy phones.⁴¹²
- Java is used in the Ginga-J standard for televisions in Brazil and the companies TPV, TQDTV, and M-Star produce Ginga-J televisions. However, Android, which is used by the major manufacturers that sell smart televisions in the United States, has completely pushed Java out of the American smart television market.⁴¹³
- Volkswagen is a current Java licensee, but, despite Oracle's efforts, opted to use Android in its automotive infotainment system instead of Java.⁴¹⁴

302. There are many other examples, which I will discuss more fully in my analysis of the harm to Oracle from Google's copying of the Java API packages in Section IX. Each of these is an example of superseding use. Google's provision of the Android platform for free or pursuant to an open-source license does not make it transformative nor any less of a substitute. The central economic question with respect to whether Google's copying is transformative remains whether that use substitutes for the Java platform – which it does regardless of the terms by which Google offers it to its prospective partners. Given these examples, there is no question that Google's use of the Java API packages was not transformative; rather, it replaced Java as an application platform that can run on many kinds of devices in numerous products and services.

⁴¹⁰ Deposition of Michael Ringhofer, December 2, 2015, p. 69:12-19; 93:7-22.

⁴¹¹ OAGOOGL2000180083; Deposition of George Saab, December 16, 2015, p. 62:11-19; Deposition of George Saab, December 16, 2015, p. 114:11-14 ("Q. Are you aware of any Oracle licensee in the media player market choosing Android over Java? A. Well, Kindle Fire would be a great example of that.").

⁴¹² Deposition of Michael Ringhofer, December 2, 2015, p. 127:18-25, 128:1-7 (Q. In "Voiceover IP Phones," has Oracle ever had a deal with Cisco or any other company that it lost to Android? A. Yes. Q. And was that with Cisco? A. Yes. Q. So Cisco used to use Java? A. They still do in some devices. Q. And they use Android in others? A. But this synopsis is we have lost the high end and low end market of the phones, and basically only currently license the legacy or the -- the older, mid-range phones. But the high end and low end phones have since went to Android.)

⁴¹³ Deposition of Michael Ringhofer, December 2, 2015 p. 111-113.

⁴¹⁴ OAGOOGL2000055353; Deposition of Michael Ringhofer, December 2, 2015, p. 26:7-9; 110:9-12.

3) Factor 1 Conclusion

303. To summarize my analysis of Factor 1, Google's use of the Java API packages to launch and profit from its Android platform is overwhelmingly commercial. The use provided Google speed to market at a critical juncture, and control of the Android ecosystem, protecting its search and other advertising revenue, each of which has led to billions of dollars in revenue and profits. Further, from an economic perspective, the fact that Java-based Android supersedes the use of the Java platform, replacing it completely in several identifiable instances, shows that the use is not transformative. For these reasons, I find that Factor 1 weighs strongly against fair use.

C. Dr. Astrachan's Factor 1 analysis

304. I have reviewed Dr. Astrachan's Factor 1 analysis and find that his conclusions with respect to economic considerations underlying the fair use factors are incorrect. In this section, I briefly summarize his opinions and then describe my response to each.

1) Non-transformative nature of the use

305. Dr. Astrachan contends that Google's use of the Java API packages is transformative because Google gave the APIs a "new expression, meaning, or message."⁴¹⁵ Dr. Astrachan further claims that because the Android platform was "designed for use in 'smartphones' – mobile devices with touch-screen interfaces and a framework for running applications," it does not compete with Java SE.⁴¹⁶ Dr. Astrachan claims that Google's use does not "supersede Java SE" and describes that Java SE was targeted at PC developers, not mobile application developers.⁴¹⁷ I understand the expression, meaning, or message of the APIs to be a technical matter and will not address it in my report. However, I will assess Dr. Astrachan's characterizations of the intended use of the Java API packages in a smartphone from an economic perspective, and the related claims regarding superseding, or substitution.

306. Dr. Astrachan's statements are unsupported for a number of economic reasons: (1) Google did not transform the copyrighted work, as evidenced by Android's superseding of the market for the Java platform in smartphone and other devices; (2) the Java platform, including Java SE, was used in mobile devices before Android entered the market; (3) Sun took steps to further the use of Java SE in the mobile devices; (4) mobile devices are on a continuum in which the distinction between feature phones and

⁴¹⁵ Opening Expert Report of Dr. Owen Astrachan Technical Issues Relating to Fair Use, January 8, 2016. P. 51

⁴¹⁶ Opening Expert Report of Dr. Owen Astrachan Technical Issues Relating to Fair Use, January 8, 2016. P. 56; I observe that there is evidence of the Java platform being used in smartphones beyond Android.

⁴¹⁷ Opening Expert Report of Dr. Owen Astrachan Technical Issues Relating to Fair Use, January 8, 2016. P. 52

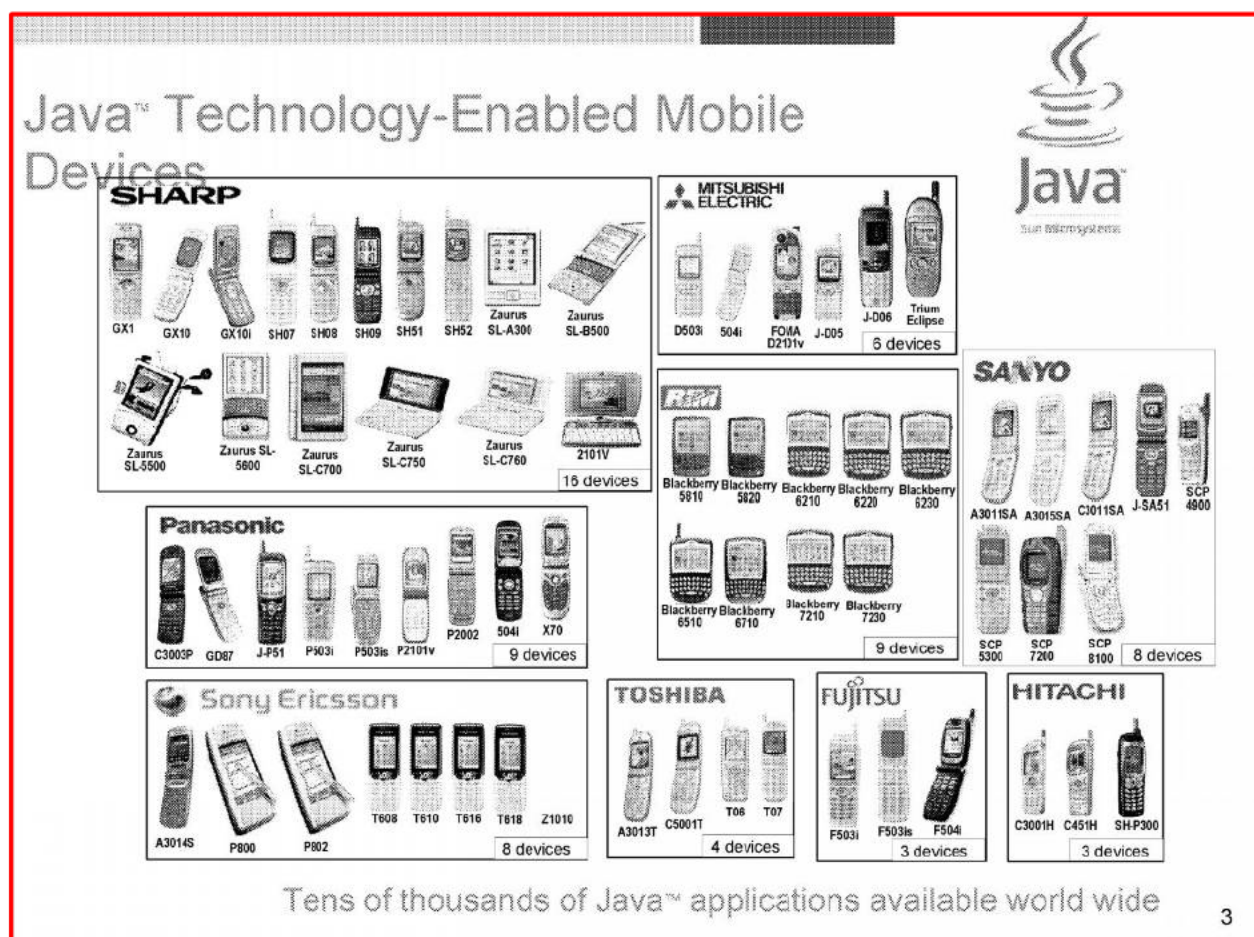
smartphones was evolving over time and Java was evolving with them, and (5) Dr. Astrachan's comparison misses the point of the substitution inquiry. I describe each of these in turn below.

a) Evidence of economic substitution

307. In Section VIII.B above, I describe the relationship between an analysis of whether a copying is transformative and the economic principle of substitution. From an economic perspective, a use that supersedes the original work is not transformative. The Java API packages serve the same purpose in Android as they do in other Java platforms (as an applications platform for different kinds of devices), and there is clear evidence of competition and substitution between Android's unlicensed use of the Java API packages, and licensed instances of the Java platform in a number of markets.

b) Java used in smartphones

308. Dr. Astrachan's claim that Google's use of Java-based Android in the smartphone market is novel is wrong. Even if it were the correct test under the law, it is factually incorrect. The Java API packages were being used in smartphones with touch-screen interfaces and a framework for running applications in the mid to late-2000s. I shared an example of one such device above, the HTC Touch Diamond. Additionally, as I discuss earlier in this report, Android creator Andy Rubin's previous firm, Danger, Inc., licensed the Java platform to build a Java-based smartphone, the Hiptop. Sun also licensed its Java platform to RIM for its Blackberry line of smartphones. Sun licensee Nokia used the Java platform in its smartphone devices, and as of 2006, had a license to use Java SE, specifically, in mobile devices. In addition, Java was evolving with the mobile phone market. Over time, that evolution meant that both Sun's ME platform and SE platform were options for mobile phones. ME was designed for use on smaller devices and was perfect for early small capacity phones, but as hardware improved and could fit bigger, more advanced systems, SE was also a viable candidate for phones. Indeed, SE was running on both Danger and Blackberry, and Nokia also licensed SE for phones.

Figure 50: Java Technology-Enabled Mobile Device (2003)s⁴¹⁸

c) Sun's ongoing mobile efforts

309. A Sun presentation from 2003 proclaims, “Java is Everywhere,” and displays a number of the over 200 models of Java-enabled mobile devices available at the time, as shown above in Figure 50. I understand from Professor Douglas Schmidt that throughout the 2000s, Sun’s Java SE platform became even better suited for increasingly powerful mobile technology. And Sun continued its efforts to expand the presence of the Java platform on mobile. In addition, in April 2007, Sun purchased the intellectual property assets of mobile platform provider SavaJe, a then-current licensee of the Java SE platform.⁴¹⁹ A contemporaneous white paper published by SavaJe described its use of Java SE in its mobile platform:

Designed from the ground up to run Java applications optimally, SavaJe OS is built around a 32-bit, multi-threaded, multi-tasking, pre-emptive, fit-for-purpose kernel. The SavaJe OS includes an embedded Java

⁴¹⁸ OAGOOGL3000000021, at -0023.

⁴¹⁹ OAGOOGL0000424812.

Virtual Machine (JVM) that is tightly coupled to the operating system kernel, and a complete set of Java libraries. The API for the SavaJe OS is the full range of J2ME and J2SE APIs. SavaJe is a Sun commercial J2SE licensee. The SavaJe OS is fully Sun compliant and is Java branded.⁴²⁰

310. An internal Sun email explaining the publicity plan for the announcement of the SavaJe acquisition summarizes Sun's plans to build a mobile platform based on the SavaJe stack, as shown below in Figure 51.

Figure 51: SavaJe Briefings Email (2007)⁴²¹

- Sun plans to create a Mobile Platform. We will take the SavaJE stack, port it to Linux and look at what roadmap is necessary to address evolving market needs. Sun is also creating a new team, led by Tim Cramer, to create solutions that span TV, mobile and desktop. We plan to hire key SavaJe individuals to jumpstart the Sun team focused on mobile.
- We will continue to innovate and grow existing products; this solution will be an addition to the current roadmap.

Sun used SavaJe's platform as the starting point for its "Java FX Mobile" platform in mid-2007.⁴²² In 2009, Sun launched its Java FX Mobile platform at the Mobile World Congress.⁴²³ Java FX Mobile was a platform specifically designed to address the market for a broad range of mobile devices, as shown below in Figure 52.

⁴²⁰ *SavaJe OS: Solving the problem of the Java™ Virtual Machine on Wireless Devices*, SavaJe Technologies, Inc., (<https://hasbrouck.org/netbook/JVMWhitePaper.pdf>).

⁴²¹ OAGOOGL0001342929, at -2930.

⁴²² OAGOOGL0001049230.

⁴²³ *Sun Microsystems follows the SavaJe acquisition with the launch JavaFX Mobile*, CCS Insight Hotline, May 20, 2007, (http://hotline.ccsinsight.com/article/Sun_Microsystems_follows_the_SavaJe_acquisition_with_the_launch_JavaFX_Mobile).

Figure 52: Java + You Presentation: Java FX Vision for Mobile (2008)⁴²⁴

311. Based on the facts I have reviewed, I conclude that the Java platform was in fact used in a variety of mobile device contexts, including on smartphones.

d) Dr. Astrachan's characterization of the relevant substitution

312. Dr. Astrachan's assertion that Google's use was transformative because Android and Java SE were not substitutes is wrong. His opinion and comparison misses the point of the economic purpose of the Java API packages. Nor is it true as discussed above – Java SE was licensed for use in mobile, Java was running on many smartphones, and Sun was embarking on a trajectory of expanding the use of Java SE in mobile. The relevant economic comparison for a substitution inquiry is the purpose of the Java APIs in software application platforms. In most of its implementations, the "purpose" of Java is not to serve as a full-stack operating system, and certainly that is not the purpose of the 37 Java API packages that were copied. Their purpose is to facilitate the development and deployment of applications across a wide range of devices, the very same purpose that Google's Java-based Android seeks to provide.

⁴²⁴ OAGOOGL0004260166, at -0178.

313. Dr. Astrachan's opinions about whether or not Google's use supersedes the use of Java API packages are not grounded in economic analysis. Instead, he describes generally that mobile application developers may have different needs than PC application developers, and insinuates that this makes Google's unlicensed use of the same APIs non-competitive. However, Google's statements demonstrate that a key objective in copying the Java API packages was to attract Java's existing developer base and ecosystem (which includes OEMs and carriers), who would then build applications for the Android platform.

2) Commerciality of the use

314. While Dr. Astrachan does not explicitly express an opinion on whether or not Google's use of Android is commercial, he asserts, with no economic analysis or discussion of Google's business model or the platform market in which it participates, that Android is free. Dr. Astrachan states:

Notably, Google does not sell the Android operating system. Instead, it makes it available to anyone for free. By publishing the entirety of the Android source code, Google allows anyone to use that source code as is or to modify it, all for no charge. The Android API packages, including the method declarations from the 37 API packages at issue here, are part of that free distribution.⁴²⁵

315. The Android platform is not "free" in any economically relevant sense. Rather, it is a part of the Google platform that provides a service to users free of charge in exchange for their behavioral data and the right to monetize their data consumption by selling access to Google's audience to advertisers. As Jonathan Rosenberg, former Senior Vice President of Products at Google, described in a Google earnings call:

"This is not philanthropy. When [the] web is better more people use it more often and that means they search more often. Android is a leading example of this."⁴²⁶

316. Had Dr. Astrachan carried out any economic analysis of Android's market role especially with an understanding of network effects and platform economics, he would have concluded that it was and is explicitly intended to deliver revenue and profit to Google, and has been highly successful in doing so.

⁴²⁵ Opening Expert Report of Dr. Owen Astrachan on Technical Issues Relating to Fair Use, January 8, 2016. P. 56

⁴²⁶ Google Inc., "Q2 2010 Earnings Call Transcript," July 15, 2010, p. 12.

D. Factor 1 conclusion

317. My economic analysis of Factor 1 weighs strongly against fair use. Google's use is highly commercial, and the direct evidence of the Java platform being superseded by Java-based Android is clear. These findings are consistent with Oracle's technical experts' finding of non-transformative use. Finally, Dr. Astrachan's assertions are unsupported, and lack any economic foundation. For all of these reasons, I find that Factor 1 clearly weighs toward a finding that Google's use of the Java platform in Android cannot be a fair use.

IX. FACTOR 4**(4) the effect of the use upon the potential market for or value of the copyrighted work** ⁴²⁷

318. In this section, I perform an economic analysis of the effects upon the potential market for or value of the copyrighted work consistent with Factor 4, which I understand to be the most important of the four factors.⁴²⁸ Specifically, I consider from an economic perspective the effect of Google's Java-based Android on Oracle's potential market for and value of the Java platform.

319. I understand that the markets that ought to be included in a Factor 4 analysis include markets where the owner licenses or could license the work itself. I understand that the Ninth Circuit has stated that "lack of harm to an established market cannot deprive the copyright holder of the right to develop alternative markets for the works."⁴²⁹ My analysis therefore includes all product markets for which Java would have been an appropriate application platform solution. I also assess whether, if unlicensed copying of the Java API packages for the uses at issue here became a widespread practice, it would "adversely affect the potential market" for the Java platform, which I understand is sufficient to negate fair use.⁴³⁰ I understand that "[t]his inquiry must take account not only of harm to the original but also of harm to the market for derivative works." *Id.* I consider the effect on the market for licensed derivatives of the Java platform.

⁴²⁷ 17 U.S. Code § 107 - Limitations on exclusive rights: Fair use

⁴²⁸ *Harper & Row, Publishers, Inc. v. Nation Enterprises*, 471 US 539 - Supreme Court 1985, at 567: ("Effect on the Market. Finally, the Act focuses on 'the effect of the use upon the potential market for or value of the copyrighted work.' This last factor is undoubtedly the single most important element of fair use.")

⁴²⁹ *A&M Records, Inc. v. Napster, Inc.*, 239 F.3d 1004, 1017 (9th Cir. 2001), *as amended* (Apr. 3, 2001), *aff'd sub nom. A&M Records, Inc. v. Napster, Inc.*, 284 F.3d 1091 (9th Cir. 2002) and *aff'd sub nom. A&M Records, Inc. v. Napster, Inc.*, 284 F.3d 1091 (9th Cir. 2002).

⁴³⁰ *Harper & Row, Publishers, Inc. v. Nation Enterprises*, 471 U.S. 539, 568 (1985) ("More important, to negate fair use one need only show that if the challenged use 'should become widespread, it would adversely affect the potential market for the copyrighted work.'"); *see also, Campbell v. Acuff-Rose Music, Inc.*, 510 U.S. 569, 590 (1994)

320. Oracle has a successful history of licensing Java for use in a variety of device types and this pattern has been impeded substantially by substitution of Java-based Android. As I find above, Google's Java-based Android substituted in existing and potential markets for the Java platform. This substitution is exacerbated by the fact that Google offered Oracle's former customers a solution with much of the same functionality (built upon Google's use of the Java API packages) effectively at no charge.⁴³¹

321. I understand that the burden of proof on fair use is on Google and that includes showing absence of harm. I have not seen evidence from Google meeting that burden. To the contrary, I find that Google's copying causes Oracle significant, ongoing and future harm to the potential market for the Java API packages (the copyrighted works).⁴³² I also find that if the type of copying that Google engaged in were to become even more widespread, there would be substantial additional harm, greatly reducing Oracle's ability to monetize its investment in Java technology and ultimately substantially decreasing firms like Oracle's incentive to innovate.

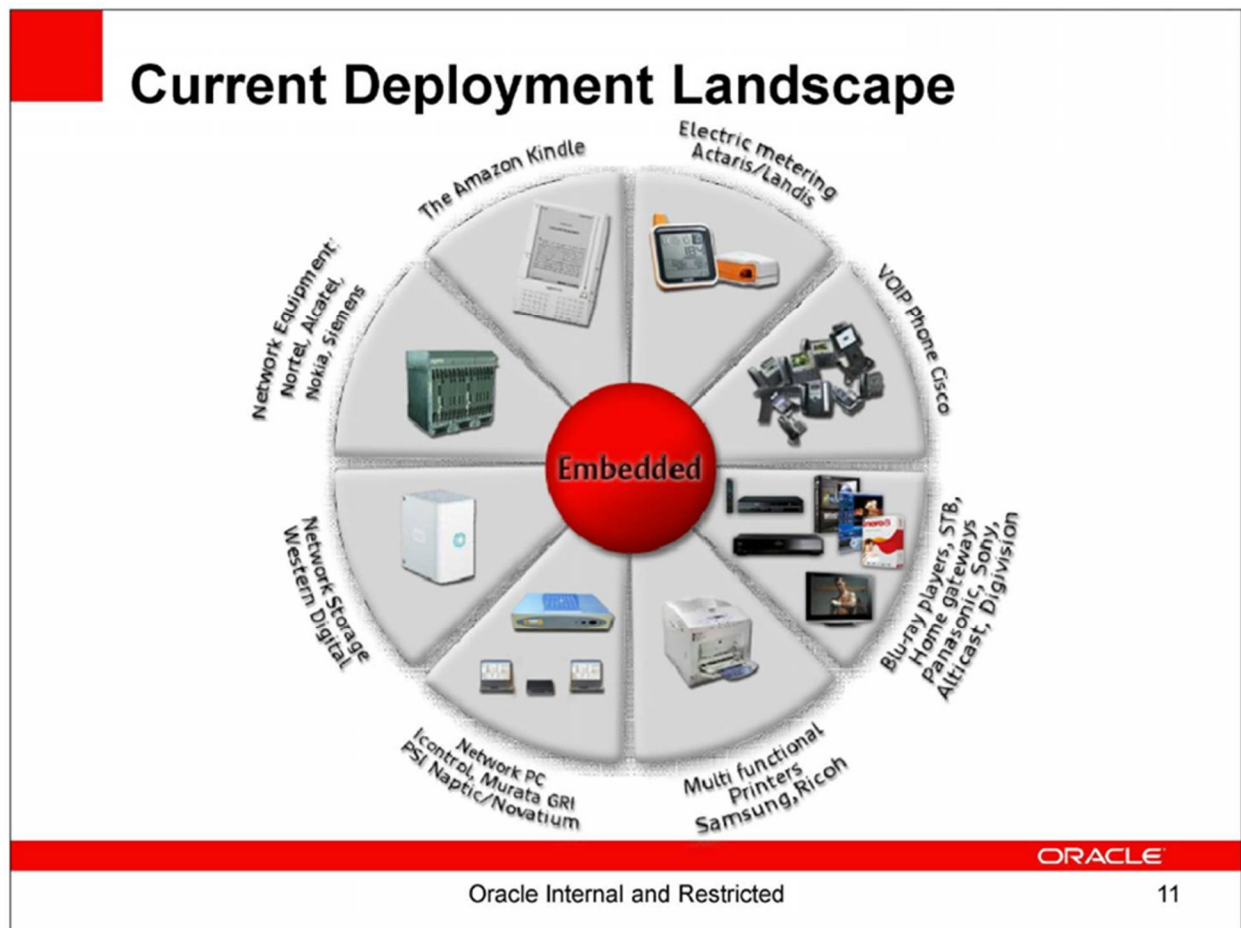
A. Summary of harm to Oracle potential markets⁴³³

322. The Java platform has been successful across an array of device categories. Figure 53 below, from an Oracle presentation shows the landscape of "embedded Java offerings."

⁴³¹ Google paid Oracle's customers through revenue sharing agreements to use the Java-based Android platform, thereby completely undermining the licensing market for the Java platform. Of course, Oracle's current CEO and former President Safra Catz explained that "[i]t's pretty hard to compete with free," but Google actually incentivizes customers to select its Java-based Android platform; Transcript of the Jury Trial Proceedings (Apr. 27, 2012), Vol. 10 at p.2322.

⁴³² See TX 1344 for a representative—but non-exhaustive—list of actual, potential and lost Java customers.

⁴³³ As part of my analysis of Factor 4, I attach as Exhibit 22 a table of additional licensing-related evidence in the various device categories analyzed in this report.

Figure 53: Oracle Presentation – Java Device Offerings (2010)⁴³⁴

These successful device categories (and other burgeoning categories) are critical licensing opportunities for the Java platform. In many of these categories from printers and e-readers to VOIP and home entertainment devices, Java-based Android is competing with the Java platform. This competition is leading to substitution and harm to Oracle's potential market across many key Java device categories.

323. First, I review examples of losses suffered by Sun and Oracle due to Android's entrance into the mobile phone device category. Table 7 below describes examples of reduced revenues and actual lost mobile phone licensing business to Oracle due to Android.

⁴³⁴ OAGOOGL0006739115 at -9125.

Table 7: Examples of Harm to Oracle in Mobile Phones (2008-Present)

OEMs & Carriers	Timeframe	Description of Loss
[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]
Motorola	2012	Oracle revenue from Motorola “dropped significantly” because of Motorola’s commitment to Android. ⁴³⁶
LG	2011	By 2011, 50% of LG smartphones expected to be Android, resulting in over \$1 million in lost revenue. ⁴³⁷
HTC ⁴³⁸	2010	HTC noted its Java shipments would “dry up very quickly as they migrate over to Android devices.”
Sprint, Verizon, AT&T, T-Mobile	2010	Oracle salesperson, Daniel Green, describes potential deals with major carriers hurt by Android, “I see Android and am run over by it in all accounts.” ⁴³⁹
Sony Ericsson	2008	Sony Ericsson began phasing out Java for Android, resulting in several million dollars in lost Java licensing revenue. ^{440 441}

324. Oracle experiences harm well beyond the mobile phone device category. Android’s Java-based application platform is being licensed in large and increasing number of Java device categories. In fact, Oracle has already experienced harm from Android competition in a number of these categories, as I show in Table 8 below.

⁴³⁵ Deposition of Michael Ringhofer, December 2, 2015. p 69:13-25.

⁴³⁶ OAGOOGL2000011623.

⁴³⁷ OAGOOGL0102403193, at -3199.

⁴³⁸ OAGOOGL0001156560.

⁴³⁹ OAGOOGL0000799926 (“Carriers don’t understand why Android isn’t Java, you put Java developers to work directly on the platform.”).

⁴⁴⁰ OAGOOGL0000804592, at -4592.

⁴⁴¹ OAGOOGL0102403193, at -3199.

Table 8: Examples of Harm to Oracle in Other Device Categories (2011-Present)

Form factor	Customer	Timeframe	Description
Tablets & e-Readers	Amazon Kindle	2011	Amazon signed a multi-million dollar deal to use Java in its Kindle e-readers. ⁴⁴² However, Oracle's efforts to license Java to Amazon for Kindle Fire devices have failed, though the Java platform products (including Java SE) are well-suited for the device. ⁴⁴³ Amazon uses Android, instead. ⁴⁴⁴
Wearables	Samsung	2014	Oracle pursued a deal to license Java for Samsung smart watch; Samsung chose Android instead. ⁴⁴⁵
Automotive	Volkswagen	2015	Deal to license Java for multiple uses in Volkswagen cars was lost due to competition with Android. ⁴⁴⁶
VOIP	Cisco Systems	Since 2011 ⁴⁴⁷	Android has replaced Java in Cisco's low-end and high-end VoIP phones. Cisco's license for Java in VoIP now covers only mid-range VoIP phones. ⁴⁴⁸
IoT / Smart devices	LGE	2015	Advanced sales discussions with LGE's IoT team for healthcare and smart device stalled, with no license ever materializing. ⁴⁴⁹
Household appliances	Samsung	2013-2014	Oracle pursuit of a licensing deal for Java in smart air conditioners was lost to Android. ⁴⁵⁰
Printers	Lexmark	2011 ⁴⁵¹	Oracle pursued a deal with Lexmark to license Java in printers, and Lexmark chose Android instead. ⁴⁵²

⁴⁴² OAGOOGL2000180083

⁴⁴³ Deposition of Georges Saab, December 16, 2015. P. 62:11-19

⁴⁴⁴ Deposition of Donald Smith, December 20, 2015. p114:11-14 ("Q. Are you aware of any Oracle licensee in the media player market choosing Android over Java? A. Well, Kindle Fire would be a great example of that.")

⁴⁴⁵ Deposition of Michael Ringhofer, December 2, 2015 p. 83:6-10, p. 102:15-18

⁴⁴⁶ Deposition of Michael Ringhofer, December 2, 2015. p. 109:12-110:1, p. 110:4-12

⁴⁴⁷ See, e.g., Announcing Cisco Mobile for Android, Cisco Communities, <https://communities.cisco.com/thread/17883?tstart=0> (last visited Feb. 3, 2016).

⁴⁴⁸ Deposition of Michael Ringhofer, December 2, 2015. p. 127:18-25, 128:1-7 (Q. In "Voiceover IP Phones," has Oracle ever had a deal with Cisco or any other company that it lost to Android? A. Yes. Q. And was that with Cisco? A. Yes. Q. So Cisco used to use Java? A. They still do in some devices. Q. And they use Android in others? A. But this synopsis is we have lost the high end and low end market of the phones, and basically only currently license the legacy or the -- the older, mid-range phones. But the high end and low end phones have since went to Android.)

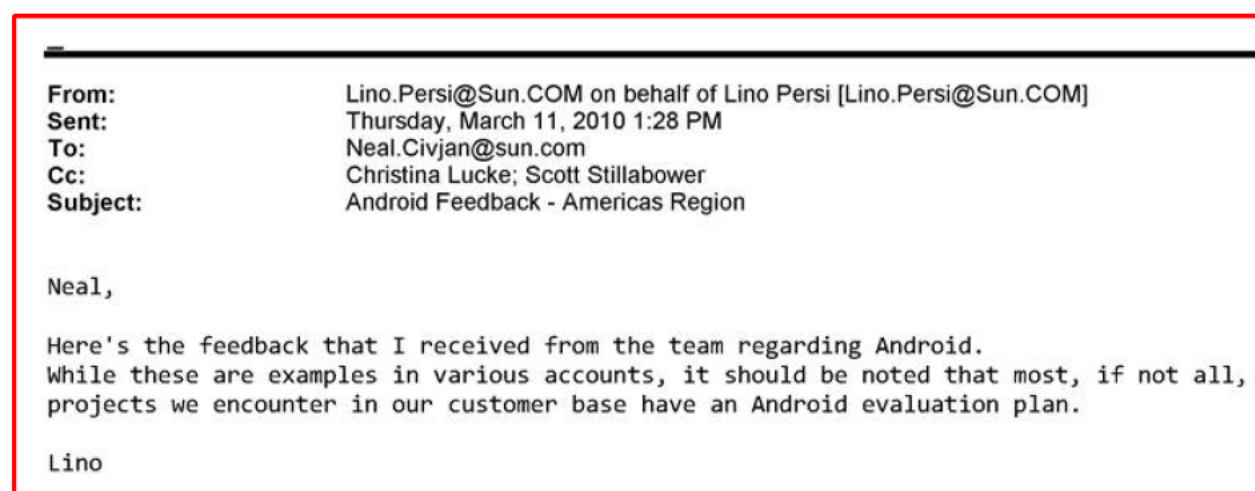
⁴⁴⁹ OAGOOGL2000022801, OAGOOGL2000131360, Deposition of Michael Ringhofer, December 2, 2015. p. 102:12-14

⁴⁵⁰ Deposition of Michael Ringhofer, December 2, 2015, p. 83:11-14 ("We pursued them with Smart Appliances such as a Smart air-conditioner which we lost to Android. So we are constantly looking to license Samsung new Java opportunities.")

Form factor	Customer	Timeframe	Description
Smart TVs	Sony, Sharp, Samsung, LG, Panasonic	2013-2015	Oracle has lost to Android in its efforts to license Java to major television manufacturers for smart TVs. ⁴⁵³

325. The descriptions of account harm above are echoed in Oracle internal documents. A March 2010 e-mail from a Senior Sales Director at Oracle, reproduced below in Figure 54, notes that “most, if not all” Java accounts face direct competition from Android.

Figure 54: Oracle Sales Team Correspondence Regarding Android competition (2010)⁴⁵⁴



326. The numerous instances of Android competition and harm in Oracle active accounts across many Java device categories also provide substantial evidence of the economic substitution by Java-based Android for the Java platform.

B. Harm to Oracle’s potential market in critical Java device categories

327. The degree of competition from Android brings the potential market harm to Oracle from the substitution of Java-based Android into particularly sharp relief. This harm comes in several forms, most commonly one or more of the following: (1) Google’s Java-based Android offering competes with the Java platform to displace current Java licensees, places extreme pricing pressure on Oracle as to existing

⁴⁵¹ Lexmark’s new app supports mobile printing, Lexmark, (Nov. 7, 2011).

⁴⁵² Deposition of Donald Smith, December 20, 2015. p. 121:3-6 (“Lexmark is an example. They’re a printer company, and we were pursuing a license with them, and they went with Android”).

⁴⁵³ Deposition of Michael Ringhofer, December 2, 2015, p Ringhofer 113:16-114:12.

⁴⁵⁴ OAGOOGL0000207699.

and prospective Java licensees, or forecloses (or significantly undermines) licensing prospects with former, existing, and new or additional customers or market categories; (2) Java licensees' market is challenged by the entry of devices running the Java-based Android platform; and (3) Google seeks to attract developers away from Java or Java-licensed operating systems to Android's own offerings.

328. In this section, I review the device categories in which Google's Java-based Android competes with Oracle's Java platform and in which I observe past, current and future harm to Oracle's actual and potential market. Specifically, I discuss the following markets: mobile phones; tablets; e-readers; wearables; automotive; Internet of Things; VOIP phones; Blu-Ray; televisions and set-top boxes; gaming; GPS systems; vending machines; printers; household appliances; cameras; payment terminals and point of sale systems.

1) Mobile phones

329. As I discuss throughout this report, Google's copying of the Java API packages was driven by time and market pressures in which Google chose to copy the Java API packages without a required license to attract the Java developer community and its established ecosystem partners (which included OEMs and carriers) to help ensure a successful launch of its Android platform and the protection of its search and other advertising core businesses.⁴⁵⁵ As one would expect, then, the first and most significant harm to Oracle's potential market occurs in that very same mobile phone market.

330. Beginning in the late 1990s, Java served as the application platform of choice for many of the earliest mobile phones. Sun enjoyed significant early success, as mobile phone adoption increased dramatically through the 2000s. By 2007, approximately 80% of mobile phones worldwide were based on the Java platform. In 2008, Google released Java-based Android without securing an appropriate license. Google's unlicensed use of Java usurped Oracle's leadership position in mobile. By 2015, the share had flipped, with Google capturing more than 80% of mobile phone device shipments with Android.⁴⁵⁶

⁴⁵⁵ In my discussion of Google's commercial use of Android, I dissect at length the profits gained and strategic advantages secured in connection with Android's Java-based application platform.

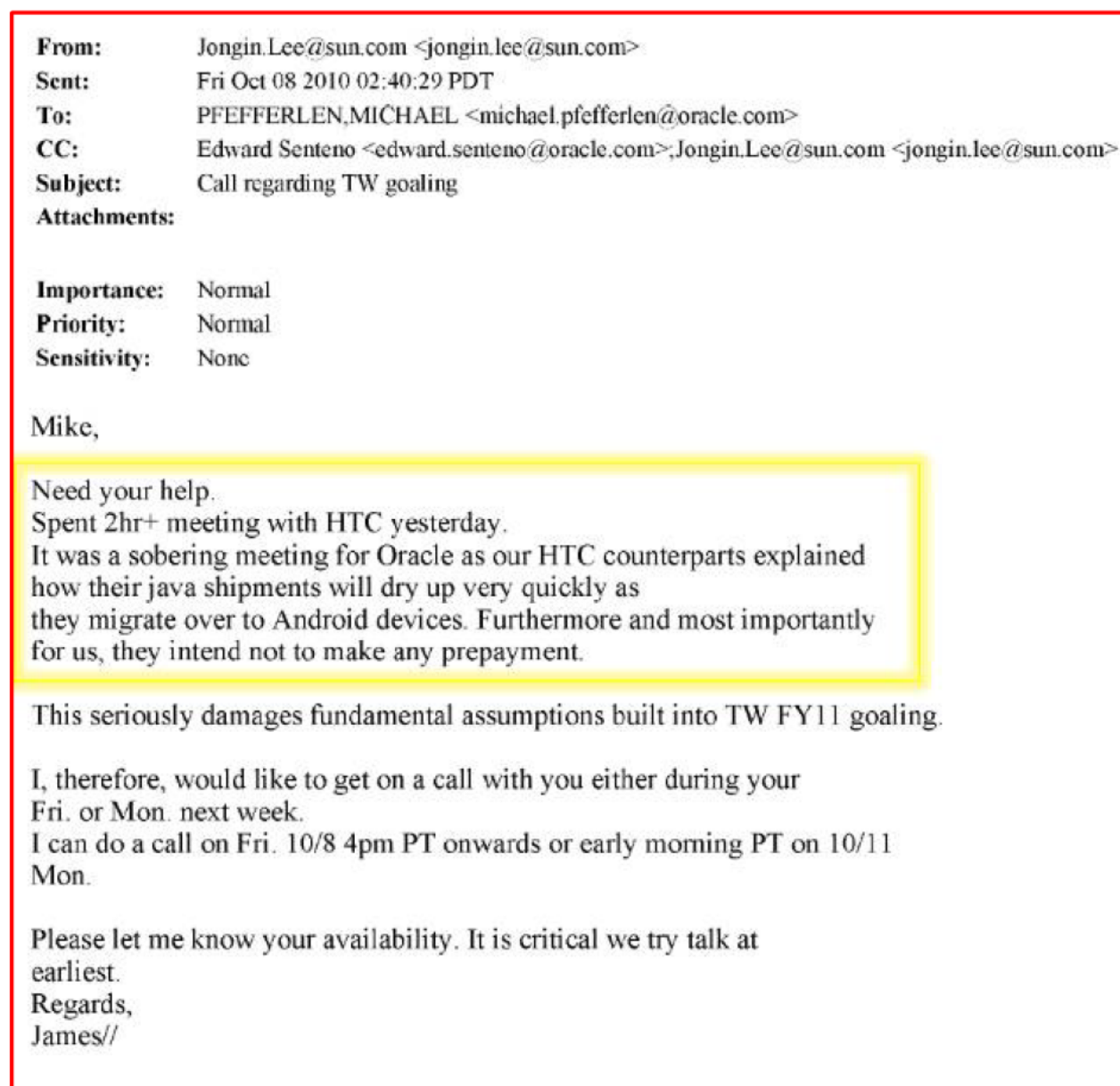
⁴⁵⁶ Exhibit 3. As I discuss above, the distinction between mobile phones considered feature phones and those referred to as smartphone changes over time and is not meaningful for my analysis of harm to Oracle's potential market. Indeed, the Java platform licensed by mobile OEMs did not constrain the field of use to exclude smartphones in any way; rather, they included the broad "mobile devices" fields of use. *See, e.g.*, OAGOOGL0100003473, at 500. In any case, the Java platform enjoyed early success in the smartphone category and was supplanted by Android, which is a Java-based platform.

a) Specific instances of lost or diminished Oracle opportunities

331. Android's growth came from Oracle's mobile Java business partners. For example, of the 91.8 million Android activations that took place in the first quarter of 2011, many were devices manufactured by OEMs that were previously some of Oracle's Java licensees: HTC represented 32%, Samsung represented 23%, Motorola represented 15% and LG represented 7%.⁴⁵⁷ In sum over 75% of Android activations in Q1 of 2011 were from OEMs that had previously been Java licensees.

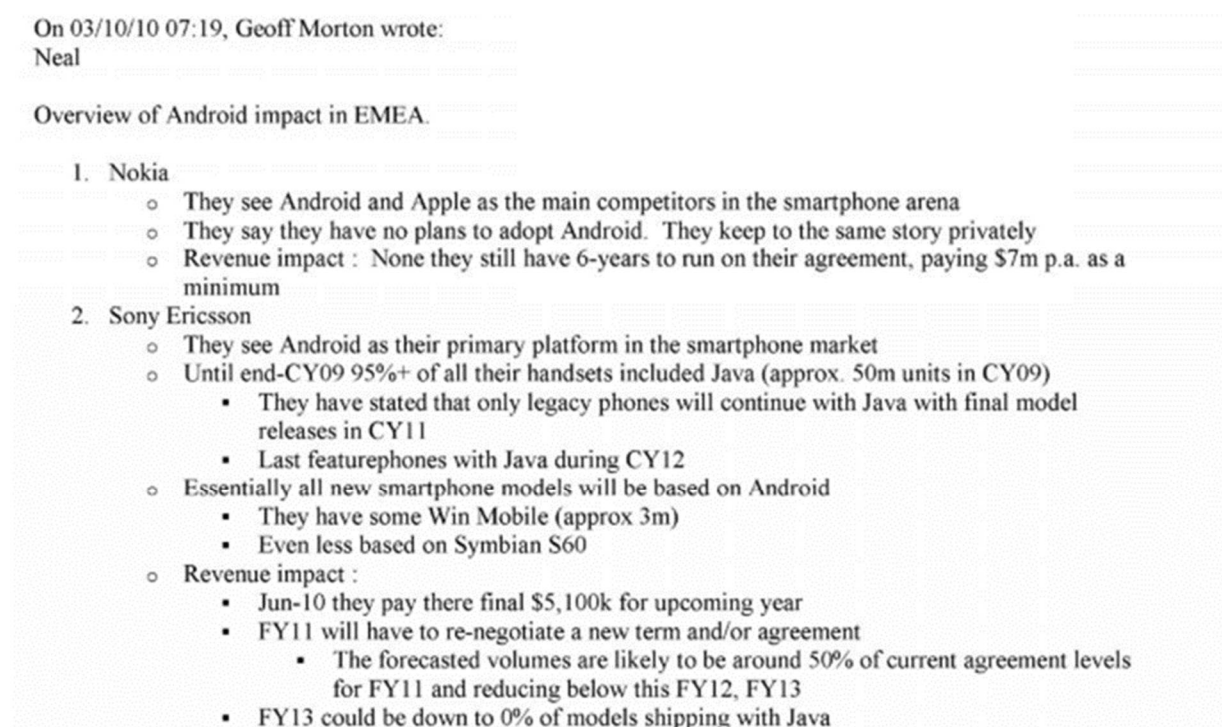
332. In **Table 7** above, I describe a number of specific instances in which Java mobile deals were lost or diminished because of competition with Java-based Android. As further illustration of how the competitive pressure from Android affected Oracle, Figure 55 below relates the details of a call between the Java sales team and HTC in which HTC described its shift to Android.

⁴⁵⁷ GOOGLE-77-00053555 (Slide 5)

Figure 55: Email Correspondence Regarding Competition for HTC Account from Android⁴⁵⁸

Similarly, an email providing data for a presentation to update Oracle executive Charles Phillips, describes the significant challenges Java faced in the EMEA (Europe, Middle East, and Africa) mobile market, replicated below in Figure 56.

⁴⁵⁸ OAGOOGL0001156560

Figure 56: Email Exchange Explaining Impact of Android on Java Platform Sales⁴⁵⁹

333. Those losses are but a few examples of a much larger trend that was occurring, in which Android use skyrocketed and Java's market share rapidly declined.

334. Google's internal correspondence reflected the competition between Java-based Android and the Java platform. For example, Figure 57 shows a slide from a Q1 2009 Android presentation to Google's Operating Committee, which measures Android's share in the same market as Java ME.⁴⁶⁰

⁴⁵⁹ OAGOOGL0000152466-67.

⁴⁶⁰ I understand that the Java platform available for resource-constrained devices is Java ME (which stands for Java Micro Edition). I further understand that the report of Professor Doug Schmidt finds that the evolution of mobile phone devices enables them to run Java SE. However, Java ME continues to serve as an edition of the Java platform for resource-constrained devices. Expert Report of Professor Doug Schmidt. I also note, as I discuss above, there were a number of smartphones that did run Java SE like the Danger phone, the SavaJE mobile platform. There were also Java licenses taken for the use of Java SE on smartphones (for example, in 2006, Nokia took such a license) OAGOOGL0000181111-1146.

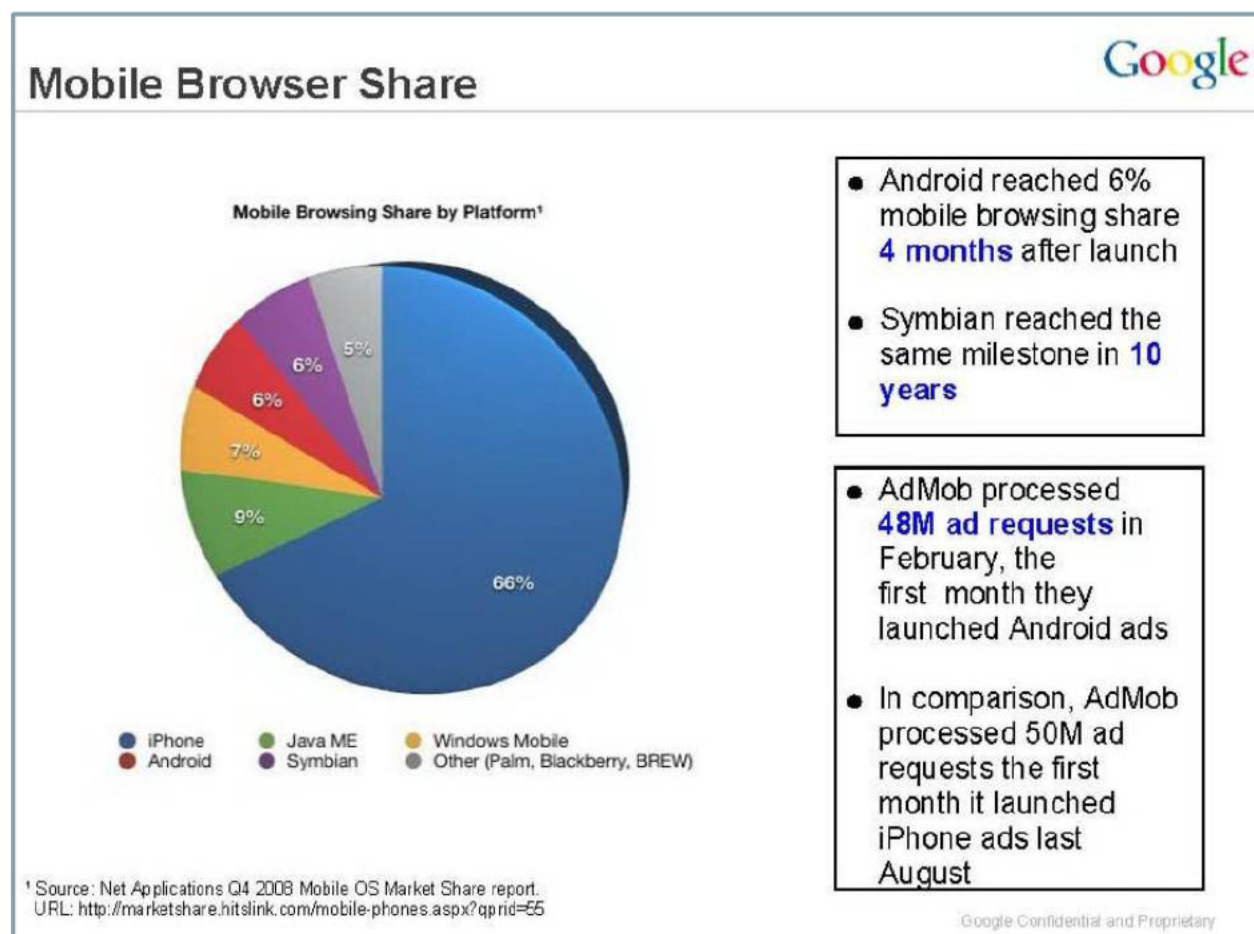
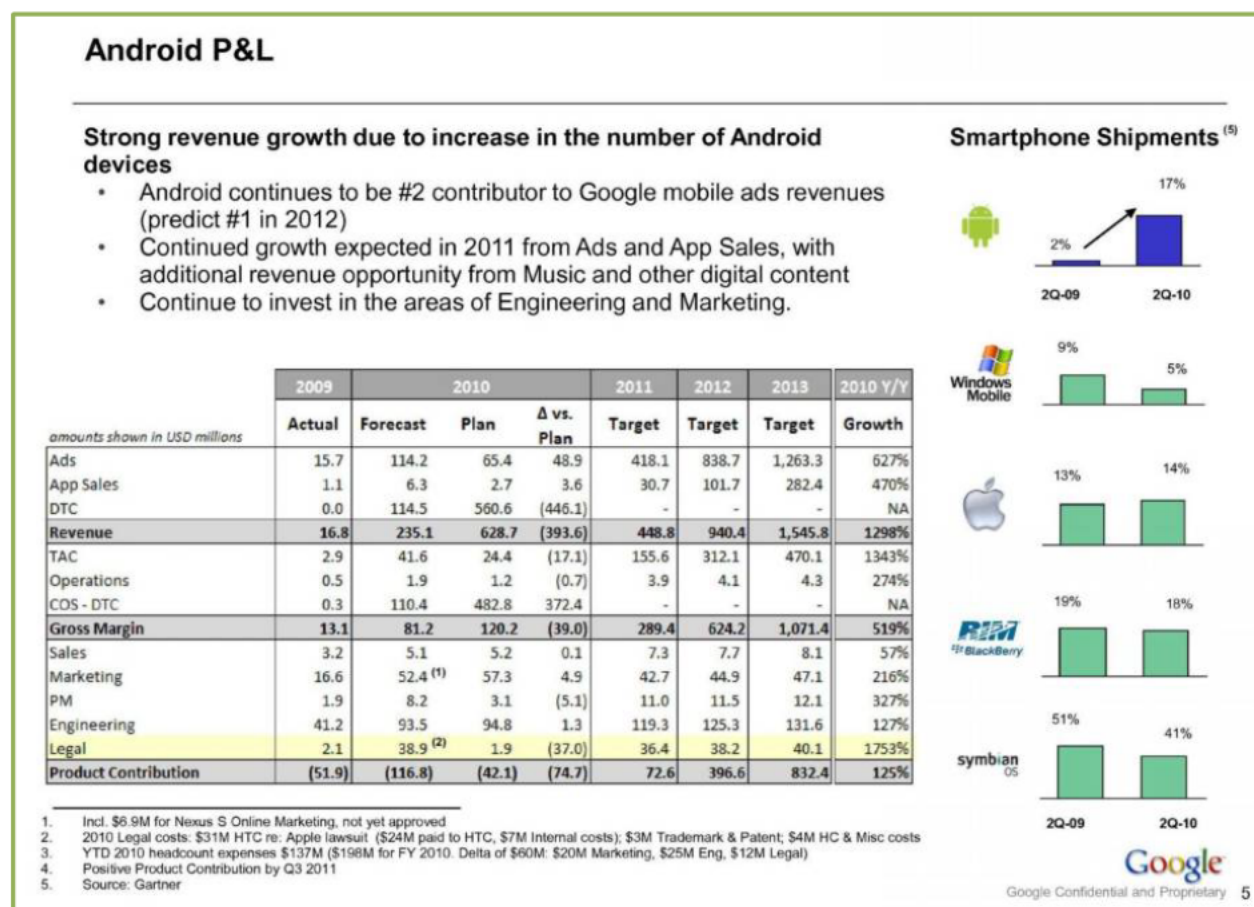
Figure 57: Android Presentation to Google Operating Committee (Q1 2009)⁴⁶¹

Figure 57 also directly compares Android's performance to Java licensed partners Symbian and Blackberry.

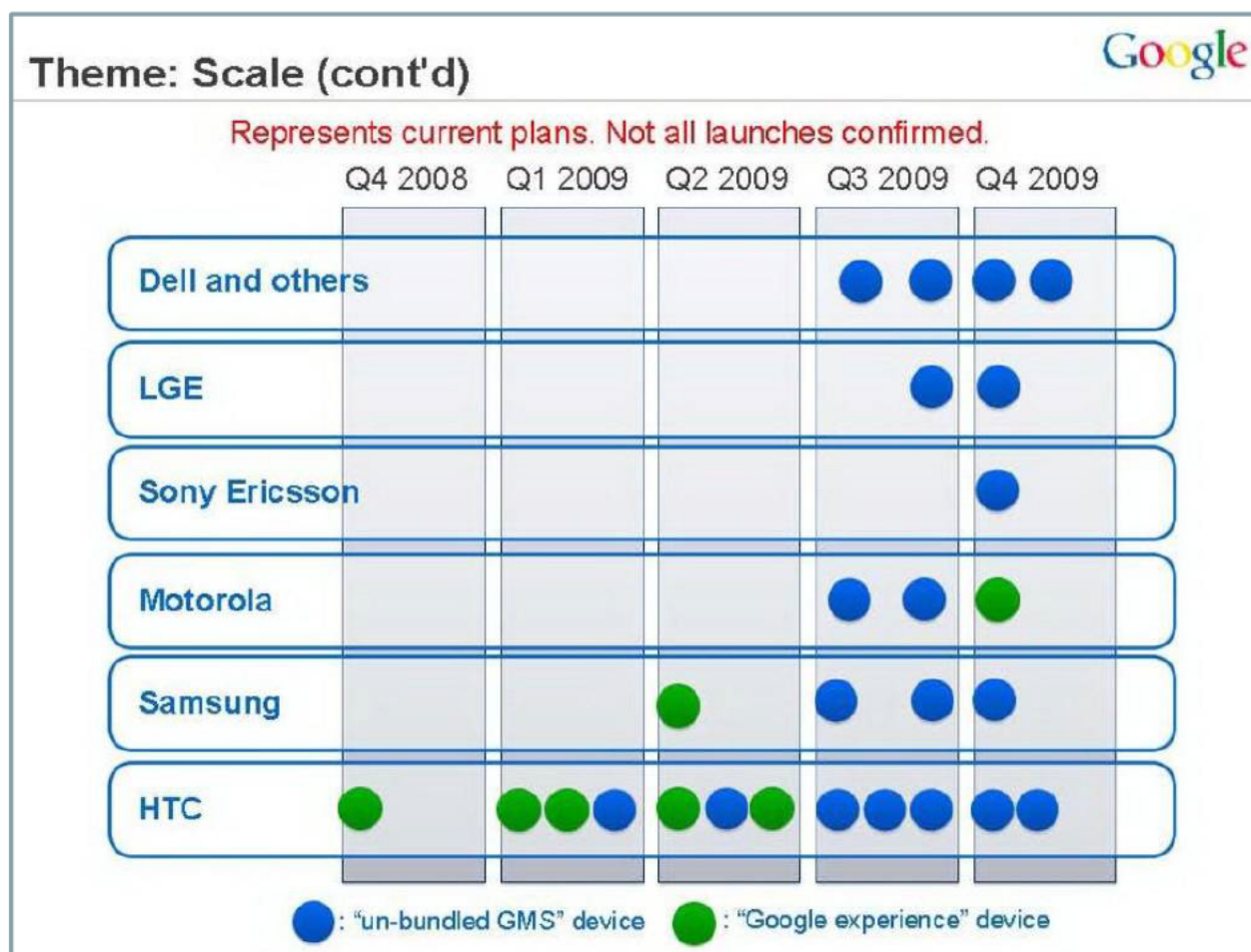
335. In my analysis of the degree of commerciality above, I showed an Android internal profit and loss figure to help understand the revenue generated by the Android platform. That same slide, which I show below as Figure 58, provides a competitive analysis on the right side of the chart. Google's view of the appropriate set of benchmark platforms against which it compares Android platform performance is also particularly instructive. Google compares the Android platform's performance to, among others, the RIM and Symbian platforms – both of which were Java licensees. This benchmarking represents Google's perspective that there is direct competition between the Java-licensed platform and Java-based Android.

⁴⁶¹ GOOGLE-01-00136051, at -6058.

Figure 58: Android Profit & Loss Statement (2010)⁴⁶²

336. The same Google quarterly review has information about progress in securing important Android partnerships. In Figure 59 below, Google executives measure their performance with OEM launches against their goals to achieve all-important scale in the mobile phone market. Several of these key OEM partners, including Samsung, LGE, Sony Ericsson, and HTC, were Java licensees at the time that they were targeted by Google.

⁴⁶² GOOGLE-01-00053552, at -3556.

Figure 59: Android Presentation to Google Operating Committee (Q1 2009)⁴⁶³

337. In Figure 60 below, the same business review goes on to describe the mobile ecosystem in which Java-based Android and the Java application platform compete.

⁴⁶³ GOOGLE-01-00136051, at -6069.

Figure 60: Android Presentation to Google Operating Committee (Q1 2009)⁴⁶⁴

The slide is titled "Theme: Disruption" and features the Google logo in the top right corner. It contains a bulleted list of key points about the Android ecosystem. The "Developers" section is highlighted with a yellow border.

- **Mobile Platform**
 - Changed mobile platform landscape - Nokia, Microsoft, Limo adjusted their strategy
- **Semiconductor companies**
 - Android is now the Linux platform for chip vendors- Qualcomm, TI, Marvell, etc.
 - Example: QCOMM has 40 Android-based design wins
- **OEM**
 - Leveraging Android and Google to minimize carrier wall garden and requirements
 - Replaced Symbian and Windows Mobile in many smartphone devices
- **Carriers**
 - Willing to "experiment" with no carrier-control open service & device model - T-Mobile, Vodafone, NTT DoCoMo, etc.
 - Using Android to lessen Nokia and Apple influence
- **Developers**
 - Android is ahead of Java, S60, & WinMo as premier mobile platform to target
 - Developers want Android Market to be the one and only content "store" for Android
- **Users**
 - Android users access the internet & connected services more

This Figure 60 highlights several notable aspects of the competition between Google's Java-based Android and the Java platform. First, under "OEM," Google notes that it "**Replaced** [Java-based] Symbian... in many smartphone devices." Second, among developers, Google states, "Android is ahead of Java."⁴⁶⁵

338. Android VP of Engineering Hiroshi Lockheimer explained certain risks of fragmentation to the Android ecosystem in a June 2015 presentation, as shown below in Figure 61.

⁴⁶⁴ GOOGLE-01-00136051, at -6137 (Emphasis added).

⁴⁶⁵ GOOGLE-01-00136051, at -6137 (Emphasis added).

Figure 61: Google Presentation Entitled “Android” (June 9, 2015)⁴⁶⁶

Fragmentation undermines the attractiveness of an operating system to developers, users, and OEMs.

Fragmentation risks making Android less attractive for app developers, users, and OEMs

App developers look for a **“write once, run anywhere”** opportunity

App developers face higher costs if required to recode apps to function on differently customized versions of the same operating system

End users suffer a **diminished experience** and **inconvenience** if their new device cannot run the same apps as their previous device, or if they suffer difficulties in transferring data

OEMs face a **shrinking customer base**

Google

26

339. Mr. Lockheimer uses the Java motto in describing “App developers look for a ‘write once, run anywhere’ opportunity.”⁴⁶⁷ This demonstrates that the Android team understood the value of maintaining platform compatibility and the consequential market harm that followed by Google’s choice to make Java-based Android incompatible with the Java platform because “App developers face higher costs if required to recode apps to function on differently customized versions of the same operating system.”

b) Harm from Java-based Android competition across the mobile phone market

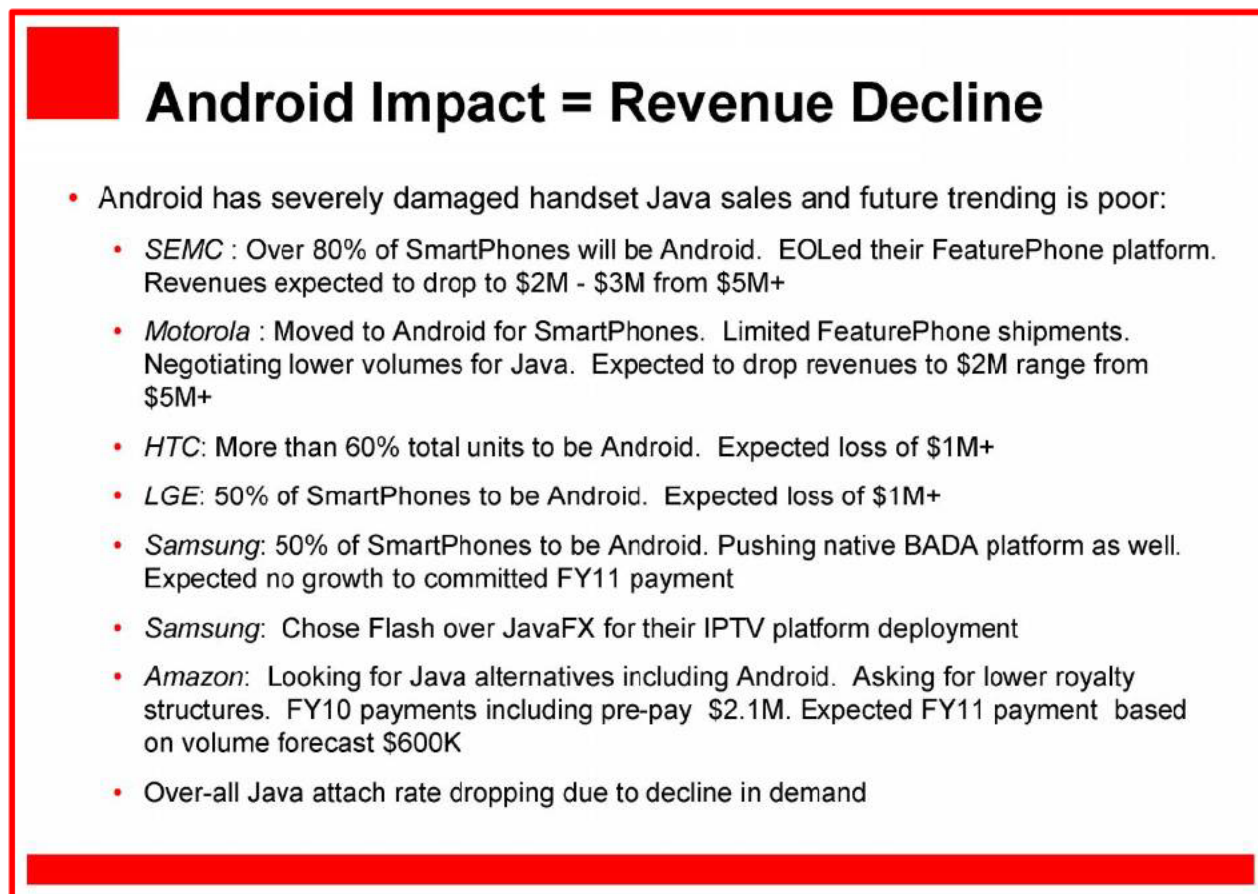
340. Oracle receives none of Google’s sizable gains from Android (more than \$40B in revenue and the extension of its search and other advertising platform to mobile). Further, the copying of the Java APIs without permission or a required license, greatly reduced Sun’s and Oracle’s ability to participate in Java’s success in mobile phones. I observe specific harm to Oracle revenue, market share and Oracle’s failure to capture meaningful share of the growth in mobile phone shipments. I detail each below. Oracle’s internal sales team tracked carefully the competitive pressure and attendant losses that Android caused to Java’s application platform. Figure 62 shows a July 2010 Oracle internal business review. In the

⁴⁶⁶ GOOG-00188553, at 578.

⁴⁶⁷ GOOG-00188553, at 578.

slide, Oracle describes revenue declines from Android in the following accounts: Sony Ericsson, Motorola, HTC, LGE and Samsung.

Figure 62: Q1 FY11 Java Sales Review – Android Impact = Revenue Decline (2010)⁴⁶⁸

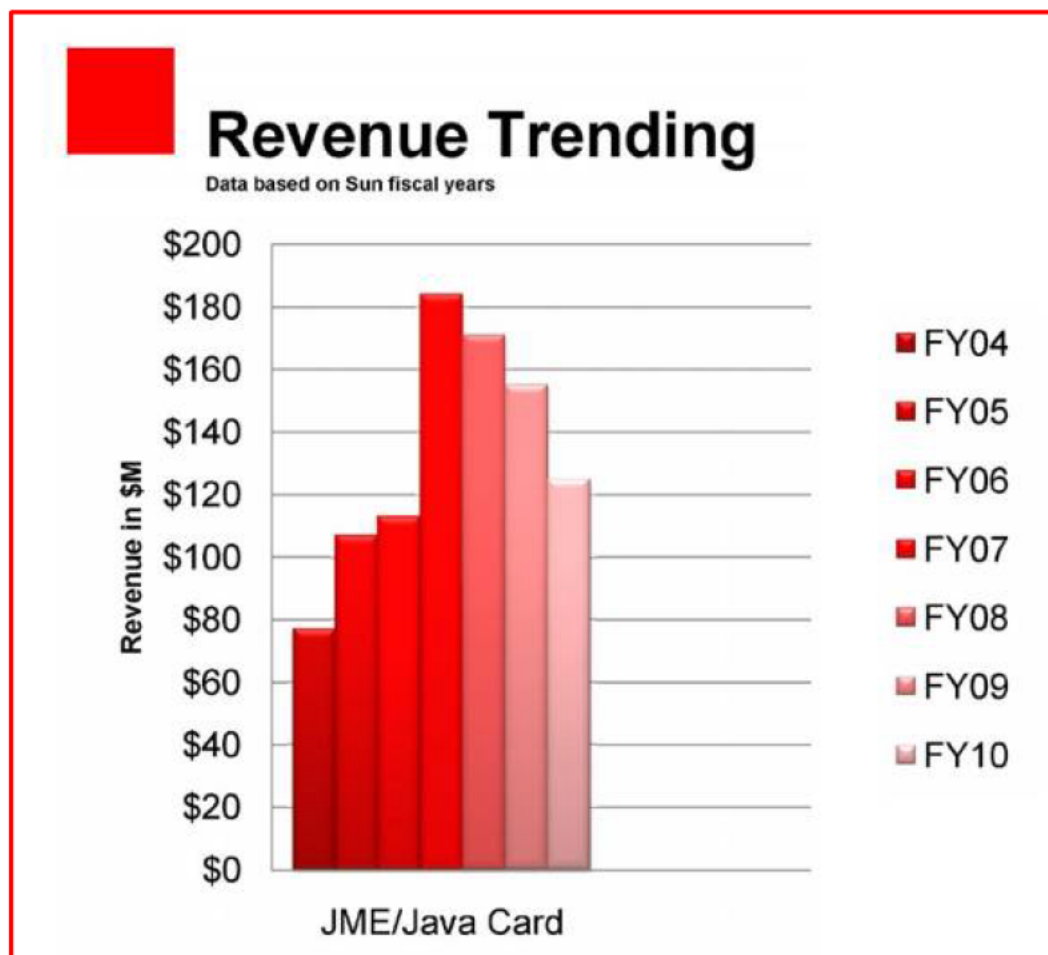


As Figure 62 above shows, Oracle experienced “severely damaged handset Java sales” caused by Android.

Android’s competitive harms can be observed in the decrease in revenue generated from Java ME licensing during the key time period.⁴⁶⁹ Figure 63, from an Oracle internal business review, shows the decrease in Java ME licensing revenue during the critical period after Android entered the market.

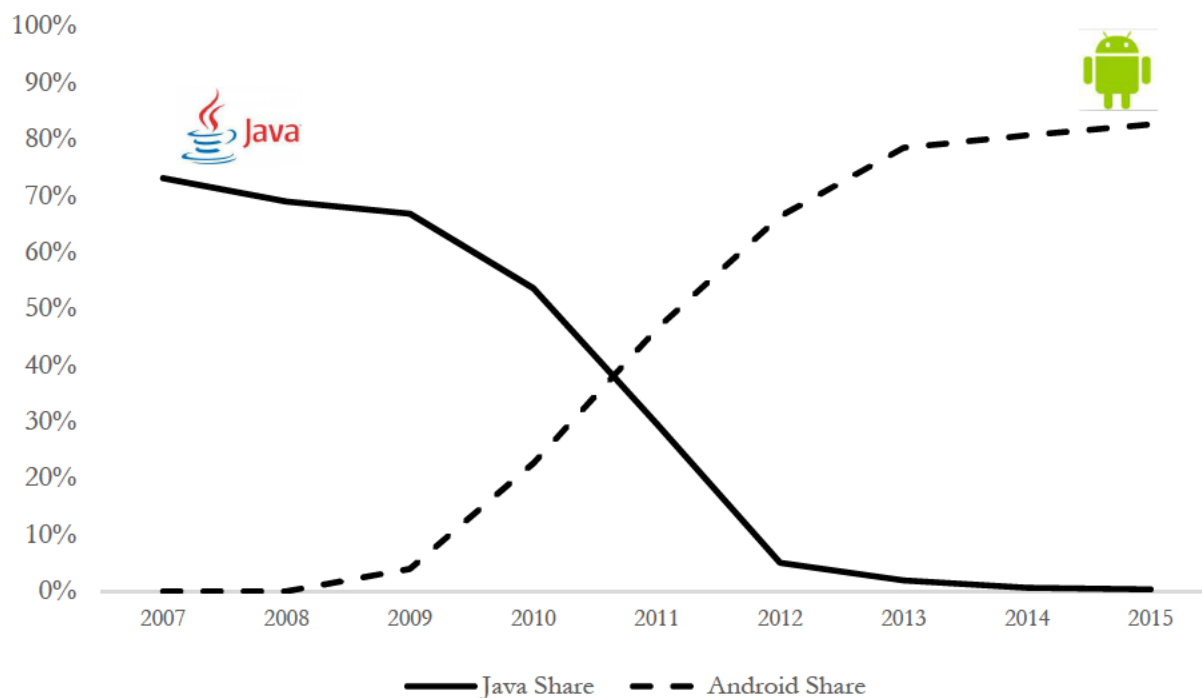
⁴⁶⁸ OAGOOGLE0014021245, at -1257

⁴⁶⁹ I understand that Java ME is the Java platform for resource-constrained devices.

Figure 63: Java Sales Quarterly Review July 2010: Java ME and Card Revenue Decline⁴⁷⁰

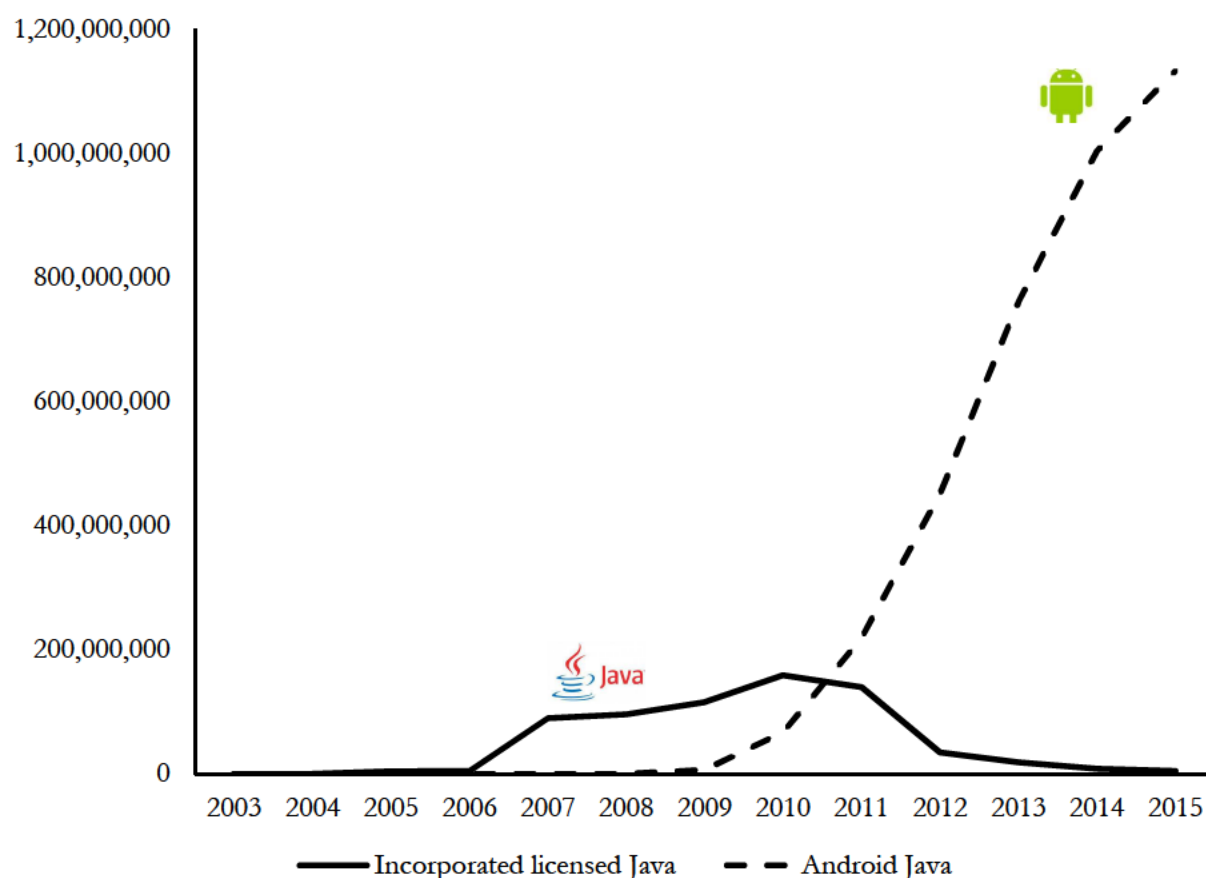
341. Figure 64 below shows the decline in licensed Java and the corresponding decrease in Java revenue following Android's growth.

⁴⁷⁰ OAGOOGL0014021245, at -1260.

Figure 64: Java-Based Android vs. Licensed Java Smartphone Market Share⁴⁷¹

342. It is also important to consider the unit growth in mobile phone devices because it demonstrates what a large market Java-based Android captured from Oracle, and the magnitude of the harm to Oracle from missing this potential growth. Google grabbed 80% market share in a category that was experiencing massive growth. Figure 65 below shows shipments of Java-based Android and Java-based smartphones.

⁴⁷¹ Exhibit 3.

Figure 65: Java-based Android vs. Oracle Java Smartphone Shipments (2003–2015)⁴⁷²

This chart suggests that Google's entry into the market with Java-based Android was well-timed. After a short ramp up in 2008 and 2009, Android shipments grew dramatically.

c) Android competition and additional harm in mobile feature phones

343. Today, Oracle's foothold in feature phones faces an imminent threat from Java-based Android. Google has repeatedly announced its intentions to enter and win particularly price-sensitive emerging market users with Android.⁴⁷³ Oracle enjoys licensing revenues from Java-based feature phones in these emerging markets.⁴⁷⁴

⁴⁷² Exhibit 3.

⁴⁷³ Puneet Sikka, *Google Looks to Expand Android One's Reach*, Market Realist (Nov. 28, 2014), <http://marketrealist.com/2014/11/google-looking-expand-android-ones-reach-indias-success>.

⁴⁷⁴ Oracle Gets To \$37 With Europe, Emerging Markets Growth, Forbes (Aug. 12, 2011), <http://www.forbes.com/sites/greatspeculations/2011/08/12/oracle-expands-in-emea-on-30-regional-growth/#76561de91226>.

344. Hiroshi Lockheimer, SVP Android, Chrome OS & Chromecast, described one device - Android One - as part of its effort to penetrate emerging markets in his deposition,:

Android One is an initiative around bringing low-cost but very high-quality phones to the emerging markets, so it's a brand that manufacturers can adopt if they -- if they adhere to certain guidelines. It's a brand that they can use to market their device that -- that to customers, end users, signifies high quality, low cost, always having the latest version of the operating system, security updates and so on.⁴⁷⁵

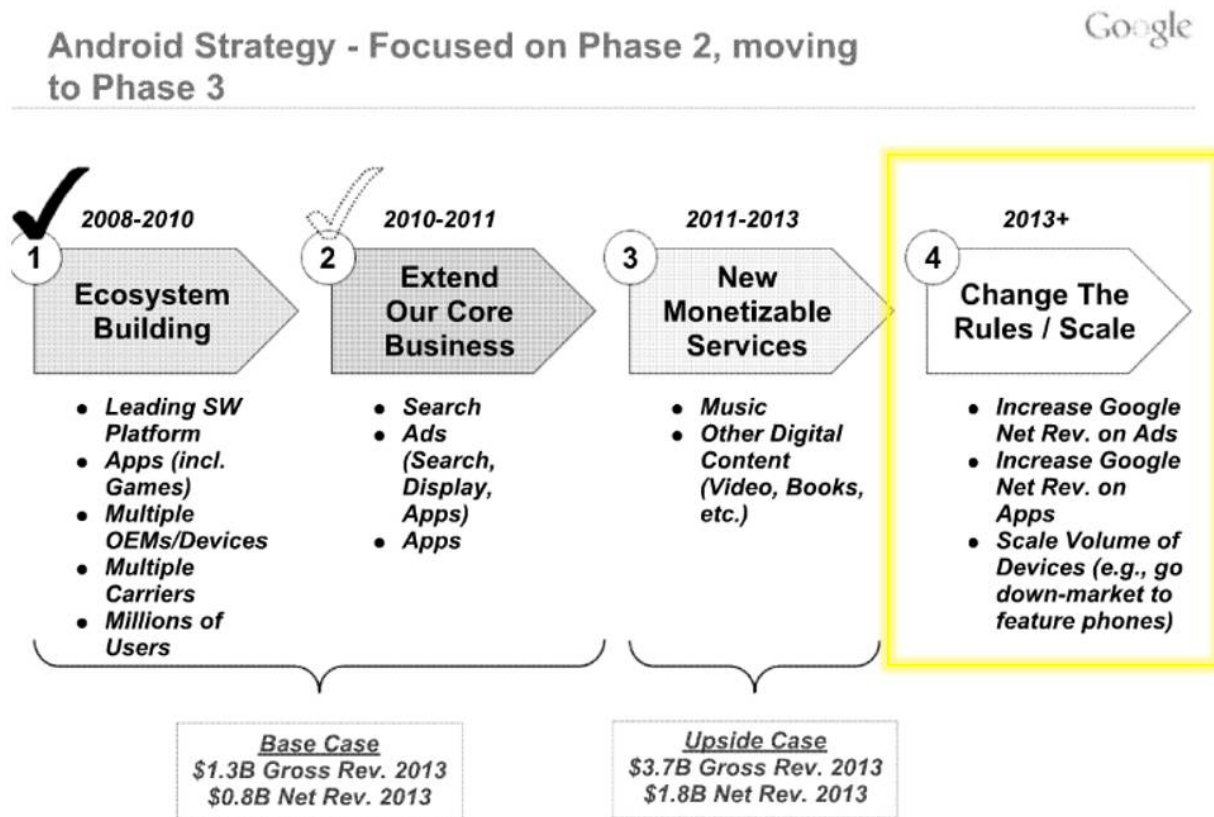
345. Emerging markets are a strategic focus for Google's mobile business. In a recent earnings call, Sundar Pichai, CEO of Alphabet stated, "And on the platform side, look, we continue to see tremendous momentum overall on Android. In just over a year, we've gone from 1 billion to 1.4 billion users. So obviously, that translates into huge opportunities for OEMs, and that's what we are seeing. Especially, there are whole new markets opening up. There's the next billion users coming online in emerging markets. And businesses, I mean [ph] enterprises, a whole opportunity for OEMs as well. So I think there's a lot of room ahead."⁴⁷⁶ Additionally, Pichai states "We're also seeing strong mobile momentum in many emerging markets like India, which is the #2 country for mobile search queries behind the U.S. This is the result of our laser focus on helping users quickly find the right information. People just want to be able to find the information they are looking for on mobile without having to worry about whether it lives on the mobile web or within apps. Mobile app usage as well as web usage is accelerating significantly."⁴⁷⁷

346. Google has long understood that this emerging market, low-cost mobile phone strategy was part of its goals for Android. In the 2010, Google internal Android strategy document I discussed above, phase four (2013+) includes the plan to "Scale Volume of Devices (e.g. go down-market to feature phones).

⁴⁷⁵ Deposition of Hiroshi Lockheimer, December 8, 2015, p.138:4-12

⁴⁷⁶ Alphabet Inc Earnings Call Transcripts Q3 2015 (Oct. 22, 2015), pg. 10.

⁴⁷⁷ Alphabet Inc Earnings Call Transcripts Q3 2015 (Oct. 22, 2015), pg. 6.

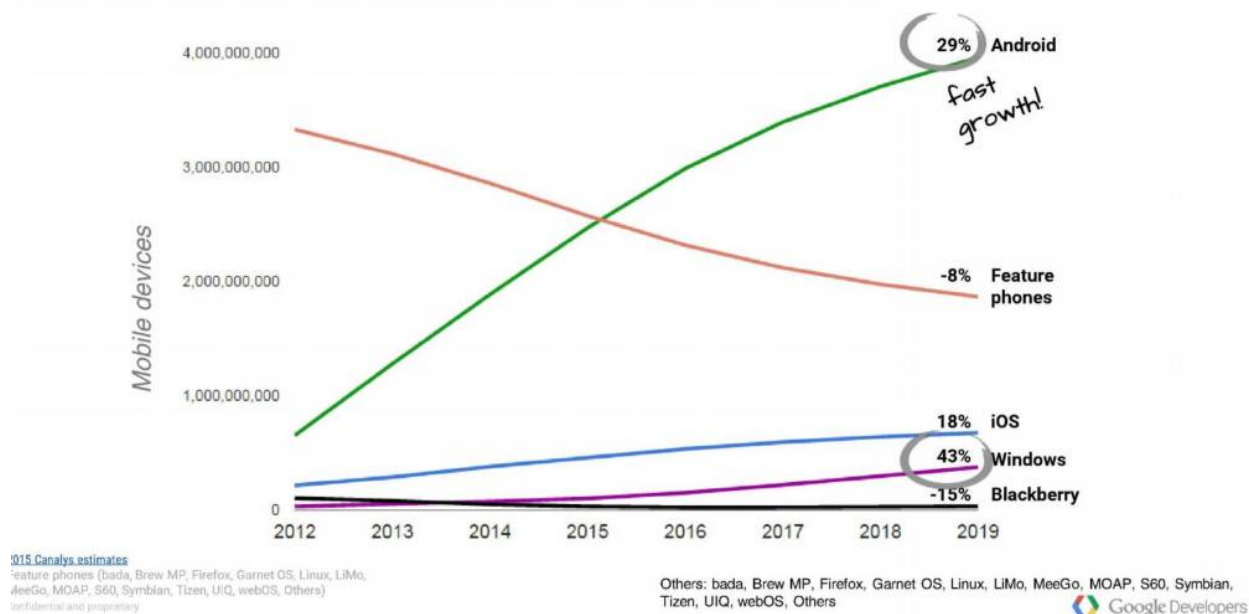
Figure 66: Android Four Phase Strategy (2010)⁴⁷⁸

347. Recent internal Google documents indicate it expects Android to replace Java on feature phones (which Java has been licensed for) within the next five years. A chart from Google’s 2015 “State of the Mobile Developer” presentation explaining this timing is shown below in Figure 67.

⁴⁷⁸ TX 1061.

Figure 67: State of the (Mobile) Developer presentation (2015)⁴⁷⁹

Most feature phone users expected to become Android phone users



d) Conclusion

348. The mobile phone device category brings the harm to Oracle's potential markets into particularly stark relief. This category is experiencing explosive growth, emerging as perhaps today's key user computing platform. Java's history of success across multiple devices and its early success in mobile phones (approx. 80% share) positioned it to participate in this mobile phone device growth. Instead, Google's Java-based Android platform competes with and substitutes for the Java platform and dramatically weakens and virtually eliminates Oracle's licensing with almost all of its key mobile accounts. Daniel Green, then a member of Java's mobile account group summed up his experience competing with Android-based Java in a 2010 email, "I see Android and am run over by it in all accounts."⁴⁸⁰

2) Other mobile devices – tablets, e-readers

349. As I describe above, Android began as and remains Google's primary means of controlling its mobile ecosystem. And the harm to Oracle is acutely felt in the mobile segment. Tablets, e-readers and wearables are additional mobile device categories that are closely related to and often build off mobile

⁴⁷⁹ GOOG-00105585, at 5630.

⁴⁸⁰ OAGOOGL0000799926.

phone application platforms. In this section, I describe the harm that Oracle has experienced in each of these additional mobile device categories.

a) Tablets

350. Oracle's Java and Google's Java-based Android platforms compete in the tablet device category. A number of Java licensees like RIM face direct competition from Android for tablets. Google has also sought to supplant the Java platform with its Android platform with tablet OEMs that are or could be Java platform licensees. In both ways, the competition from Java-based Android in the tablet device category causes substantial harm to Oracle's licensing of its Java platform for tablets.

(i) Market opportunity

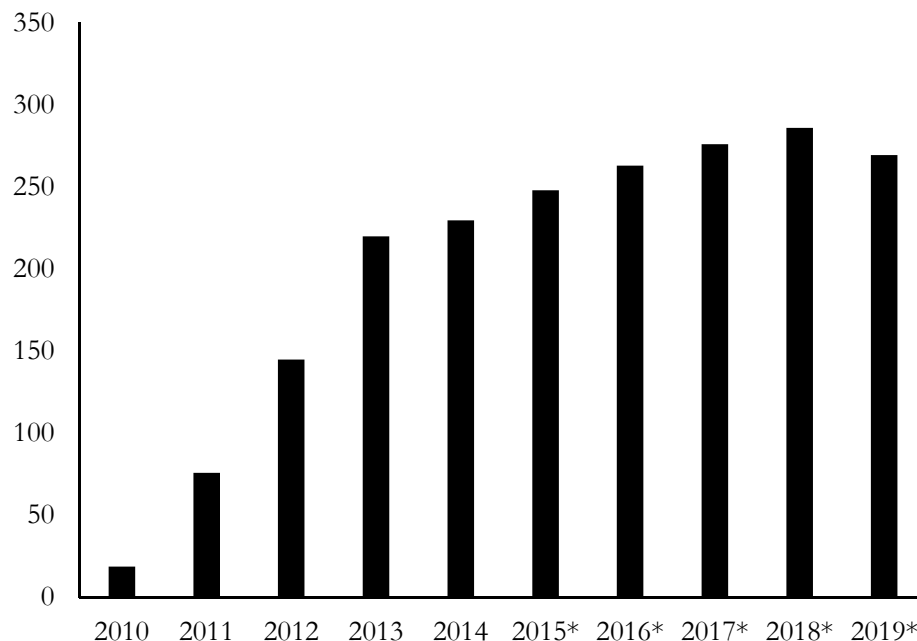
351. A tablet is a portable computer that has touchscreen capabilities.⁴⁸¹ In April of 2010, Apple released the original iPad, selling 300,000 units in the first day and two million units within the first two months.⁴⁸² Nineteen million tablets were sold globally in 2010, increasing to over 230 million by 2015.⁴⁸³ Figure 68 displays the actual and potential shipments of tablets this decade. This demonstrates that the tablet market offers tremendous market opportunity.

⁴⁸¹ Definition of Tablet Computer, PC Mag, <http://www.pcmag.com/encyclopedia/term/52520/tablet-computer> (last visited January 21, 2016).

⁴⁸² Jacob Kastrenakes, *The iPad's 5th Anniversary: A Timeline of Apple's Category-Defining Tablet*, The Verge (Apr. 3, 2015), <http://www.theverge.com/2015/4/3/8339599/apple-ipad-five-years-old-timeline-photos-videos>.

⁴⁸³ *Projected Unit Shipments of Tablets Worldwide from 2010 to 2019*, Statista, <http://www.statista.com/statistics/269912/worldwide-tablet-shipments-forecast> (last visited January 25, 2016).

Figure 68: Actual and projected shipments of tablets worldwide from 2010 to 2019 (in million units)⁴⁸⁴



(ii) Java platform for tablets

352. The tablet market is a natural fit for the Java platform. Java had enjoyed widespread adoption in mobile phones, as discussed above and was also used in PDAs (Personal Digital Assistant).⁴⁸⁵ Oracle licensed Java for use in tablets as early as 2005.⁴⁸⁶

353. Oracle has continued to actively pursue licensing opportunities in the tablet market. In 2011, Oracle executives met with then-RIM CEO Jim Basille to discuss a potential deal to license the Java

⁴⁸⁴ *Projected unit shipments of tablets worldwide from 2010 to 2019 (in million units)*, Statista (Mar. 2015), www.statista.com/statistics/269912/worldwide-tablet-shipments-forecast/.

⁴⁸⁵ As early as 2002, there already existed touchscreen PDAs that ran Java applications—for example, the Sharp Zaurus PDA was demonstrated at the JavaOne conference in 2002 and already had a growing community of commercial and open-source developers who were writing applications for it. Jonathan Knudsen, *Java Programming on the Sharp Zaurus*, Oracle Technology Network (July 2002), <http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/systems/index-156187.html>.

⁴⁸⁶ OAGOOGL0100010355, p. 3. (Commercial Use License Agreement between Sun and Encore Software Limited, Field of Use includes “mobile tablet PCs”)

platform for RIM's forthcoming tablet device, the BlackBerry Playbook.⁴⁸⁷ The deal did not materialize; rather the Playbook now supports Android applications.⁴⁸⁸

(iii) Java-based Android in tablets

354. Google's Java-based Android platform has enjoyed much success in the tablet market, diminishing the Java platform's market opportunity in this market segment. As early as 2011 and 2012, Android topped the list of platforms targeted by tablet application developers.⁴⁸⁹ In February of 2011 Motorola released the first Android-powered tablet, the Xoom.⁴⁹⁰ In 2012, Samsung, Acer, Nexus, Lenovo and several other OEMs began selling Android-powered tablets. In 2014, Android further expanded its market share of tablets, topping the market with 67.7% of unit shipments (159.5 million tablets shipped), ahead of second-place Apple's 27.5% of unit shipments (64.9 million tablets shipped). IDC's Research Director for Tablets attributed Android's success in the tablet market to the price pressure on tablets and "an influx of entry-level products, which ultimately serves Android really well."⁴⁹¹

(iv) Android competition and market harm to Oracle in tablets

355. Although Amazon licensed the Java platform for its first e-reader, the Kindle, Oracle's efforts to license Java to Amazon for its Kindle Fire tablet have failed to this point.⁴⁹² Amazon decided to employ Android for its Kindle Fire instead. Amazon's Kindle Fire team has met with Oracle's technology and licensing teams and actively considered Java SE, acknowledging that Java SE may be well-suited for the device.⁴⁹³ In his deposition, Donald Smith, Oracle's Senior Director of Product Management, confirmed this potential fit and the market opportunity lost to Android:

"Q. Are you aware of any Oracle licensee in the media player market choosing Android over Java?

⁴⁸⁷ OAGOOGL2000180086.

⁴⁸⁸ Seth Weintraub, The Blackberry Playbook Will Run Android Apps, Fortune (Mar. 24, 2011), <http://fortune.com/2011/03/24/the-blackberry-playbook-will-run-android-apps>.

⁴⁸⁹ GOOG-00113010, at -3035, GOOG-00115202, at -5247.

⁴⁹⁰ Motorola XOOM MZ604, GSMArena, http://www.gsmarena.com/motorola_xoom_mz604-3833.php.

⁴⁹¹ Press Release, Worldwide Tablet Growth Expected to Slow to 7.2% in 2014 Along with First Year of iPad Decline, According to IDC, IDC (Nov. 25, 2014), <http://www.idc.com/getdoc.jsp?containerId=prUS25267314>.

⁴⁹² Deposition of Donald Smith, Nov. 20, 2015.

⁴⁹³ Deposition of Donald Smith, Nov. 20, 2015.

A. Well, Kindle Fire would be a great example of that..⁴⁹⁴

356. Also of note, in working to win the Kindle Fire account from Android, Oracle proposed a steep discount, acknowledging they faced a “formidable competitor” in Android.⁴⁹⁵ Such pricing pressure further indicates the market harm that Oracle faced from Android’s copying of the Java API packages and entry into tablet device category. Price erosion is a classic result of competition. In his deposition, Oracle’s Director of Worldwide Java Sales confirmed that Oracle is being pushed out of the tablet market.

Q: What about for “Tablets”? Are you aware of any company for whom Oracle once had a deal for Java that it has lost to Android?

A. Not -- not that we've had that we've lost. Again, very similar to a few of these categories, "Tablets" is one where it's extremely price sensitive, that Android has basically, if you would, cannibalize that market from us because of it being free that we just -- haven't had the ability to penetrate it because of basically they don't want to pay for it when they don't -- when they think they already have it for free.⁴⁹⁶

357. Android also competes against the Java platform for tablets with respect to the tablet developer community, which competition causes harm to Oracle’s potential tablet market.

358. Table 9 below shows the results of a 2011 survey of developers asking what tablet operating system or application platform they would be developing on then and in the future. As early as 2011 we see wide adoption of Android (“Android 2.3 or earlier” and “Android 3.0 Honeycomb”), rather than the Java platform.⁴⁹⁷

Table 9: Mobile Developer Preference Survey (2011)⁴⁹⁸

Operating System	Currently Targeting	Plan to Target within 6 Months	Plan to Target in 7 to 12 Months	Plan to Target in over 1 Year	No Plans
Android 2.3 or earlier	44.3	22.8	10.1	6.0	16.8
Microsoft Windows 7	43.0	18.5	9.3	5.3	23.8
Apple iOS	42.7	26.0	11.3	4.0	16.0
Microsoft Windows Embedded Compact 7	27.8	20.5	14.6	3.3	33.8
Android 3.0 Honeycomb	26.2	34.9	18.8	9.4	10.7

⁴⁹⁴ Deposition of Donald Smith, Nov. 20, 2015, p. 114:11-14.

⁴⁹⁵ Indirect Executive Summary Form—Java, OAGOOGL2000180051, at -0056.

⁴⁹⁶ Deposition of Michael Ringhofer, Dec 2 2015.

⁴⁹⁷ GOOG-00113010, at -3035.

⁴⁹⁸ GOOG-00113010, at -3035.

RIM Blackberry Playbook OS	21.2	15.9	14.6	7.3	41.1
HP (Palm) Web OS	13.3	24.7	14.7	4.0	43.3
Other Tablet Operating System	8.4	16.1	15.4	2.1	58.0
MeeGo	7.4	22.1	13.4	4.0	53.0

b) e-readers

359. Closely related to both mobile phones and tablets, e-readers are a significant device category with robust licensing potential. Instead of buying books and storing them physically, e-readers are single purpose lightweight digital devices that permit users to save and read books and other published materials, replacing the need for physical versions of books, magazines and newspapers.

360. I observe a similar competitive pressure and market harm pattern in e-readers as I see in other mobile devices. The Java platform was present in early e-readers including the Kindle, where it remains today. Since Android's release, however, Google has exerted significant competitive pressure by trying to displace the Java platform in e-readers and also by providing e-reader technology on Android-powered tablets which compete with traditional e-readers. Finally, I also observe harm to the Java e-reader developer community who cannot port their apps to Android because Google chose to make Android incompatible with the Java platform.

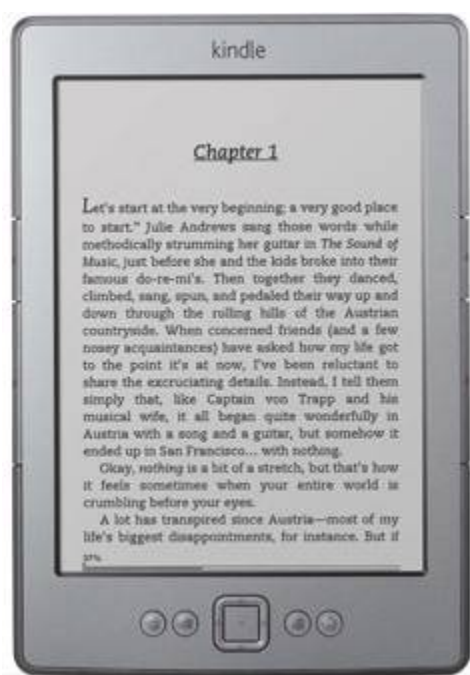
(i) Market opportunity

361. While the first generation of e-readers was introduced in 1998, they became popular with the release of Amazon's Kindle in 2007.⁴⁹⁹ Within hours, Kindle was sold out on the day of its release, with a price of \$399.⁵⁰⁰ In its first year, Kindle sold more than 250,000 units.⁵⁰¹ Figure 69 shows a version of an early Kindle.

⁴⁹⁹ B. Bakelaar, *E-readers behind the scenes*, Princeton Library (July, 25 2012), <http://princetonlibrary.org/blog/2012/07/e-readers-behind-scenes>

⁵⁰⁰ Yoan Jo, et. al., Amazon Kindle Consultant's Report, SCCG (April 2010), <http://www-scf.usc.edu/~yoanjo/amazon%20kindle.pdf>

⁵⁰¹ Zach Pontz, *A Year Later, Amazon's Kindle finds a Niche*, CNN (Dec. 4, 2008), <http://www.cnn.com/2008/TECH/12/03/kindle.electronic.reader/>

Figure 69: Amazon Kindle e-reader⁵⁰²

Since the Kindle launch, e-readers improved in design and capabilities, such as weight, speed and storage.

362. By 2012, global shipments of e-readers reached 40 million units per year.⁵⁰³ Though there has been some decline because users select tablets that include e-reading functionality, the market for e-readers remains important today. In one year, Amazon sold more than 250,000 e-readers.⁵⁰⁴ Amazon has the largest market share and 75% of all e-books sold in the US are downloaded from Kindle bookstore.⁵⁰⁵

(ii) Android competition and market harm in e-readers

363. As I discuss above, the industry-leading Kindle has been a Java licensee in many versions of the device since its launch in 2007.⁵⁰⁶ Despite this early presence, the Oracle licensing team reports

⁵⁰² See, e.g., Kindle, 6" E Ink Display, Wi-Fi, Amazon.com, <http://www.amazon.com/Kindle-eReader-eBook-Reader-e-Reader-Special-Offers/dp/B0051QVESA> (last visited Feb. 5, 2016).

⁵⁰³ Unit Sales of E-Readers Worldwide from 2010 to 2015 (in millions), Statista, <http://www.statista.com/statistics/326906/worldwide-unit-sales-ereaders/>.

⁵⁰⁴ Zach Pontz, *A Year Later, Amazon's Kindle finds a Niche*, CNN (Dec. 4, 2008), <http://www.cnn.com/2008/TECH/12/03/kindle.electronic.reader/>.

⁵⁰⁵ Michael Kozlowski, *The State of the e-Reader Industry in 2015*, Good eReader (Sept. 24, 2015), <http://goodereader.com/blog/electronic-readers/the-state-of-e-reader-industry-in-2015>.

⁵⁰⁶ Java's license with Amazon actually predates the Kindle release, going back to December 2003. That first license was for a Java ME implementation (the CDC HotSpot) for the Kindle E-book Reader. Almost four years later in

consistent, quarterly price and competition pressure on the Kindle account due to Android; nearly every quarter Amazon actively considers switching from the Java platform to Android for new generations of Kindle devices.⁵⁰⁷ Indeed, as I discuss above, the Amazon multi-purpose tablet, the Kindle Fire, adopted Android rather than the Java platform.

364. As with tablets and mobile phones, Oracle also faces competition from Java-based Android in e-reader developer adoption. As I discuss throughout this report, Java is a network good and the size and health of its developer community is critical to Oracle's ability to license the Java platform. Table 10 below shows the results of an early survey – in 2012 – that encompasses both e-reader and traditional tablet formats. Developers were asked: “If you develop applications for the tablets or slates, which of the following tablet platforms do you target?” First, I note that developers are selecting between the Java-based Android platform and Java-licensed platforms like Blackberry and Kindle. Google's competition for developer mindshare between its Android platform and Java-licensed platforms causes harm also to Oracle's potential market for developers who are now writing apps for Java-based Android which is incompatible with the Java platform rather than writing apps for the Java platform.

Table 10: Android Tops List of Tablet Platforms That Developers Target in 2012⁵⁰⁸

Operating System	Percent of Developers on Each Platform (Note: Developers Can Develop to Multiple Platforms)
Android	86.3%
iOS	56.9%
Windows	55.3%
Blackberry	31.8%
Kindle	17.3%
NOOK	10.6%
Other	2.4%

As Table 10 above shows, Oracle's potential market for application developers for the tablet and e-reader device categories is harmed by competition from Android.⁵⁰⁹

November 2007, Amazon released its first Kindle E-book reader. Email from Michael Ringhofer to Dorothy Brentari et. al., OAGOOGL2000180083, at -0083-84.

⁵⁰⁷ Email from Michael Ringhofer to Dorothy Brentari et. al., OAGOOGL2000180083, at -0084.

⁵⁰⁸ GOOG-00115202, at -5247. Note that this multiple response question allowed the developers to select as many responses as they wished, and thus the total number of cases will not come to 100%.

⁵⁰⁹ GOOG-00115202, at -5247. See also OAGOOGL2000644011.

c) Wearables

365. Another mobile device category is known as wearables. Wearables are computing devices that, as the name suggests, are incorporated in clothing or other accessories (e.g. rings, watches, bracelets). As in each of the mobile device categories above, I observe harm to Oracle's potential market from the competitive entry and substitution of Android in place of an early leadership position by the Java platform.

(i) Market opportunity and early Java presence in the wearable device category

366. Wearables are a large and growing opportunity. The market of wearable devices is predicted to have 170 million devices in use by 2017 and to be worth \$8.2 billion.⁵¹⁰

367. Sun was an early pioneer in the creation of connected wearable devices. In 1998, attendees of the JavaOne conference were given a "Java Ring" embedded with a microprocessor that ran the Java platform.⁵¹¹ A photograph of the Java Ring is pictured below in Figure 70.

Figure 70: Java Ring



At the time, Jakob Nielsen of the Nielsen Norman Group commented on the potential opportunity in wearables, "[T]he deciding point is that you will always have it with you. Many aspects of computing change once there is no need to go to a special room to get at the computer."⁵¹²

368. Oracle continues to offer the Java platform to wearable device manufacturers and providers. At each of the recent JavaOne and Oracle OpenWorld conferences, there were panels on Java's use in

⁵¹⁰ Bloomberg, *Who Will Win the War on Wearables?*, The Telegraph (July 12, 2014, 7:00am), <http://www.telegraph.co.uk/technology/10961228/Who-will-win-the-war-on-wearables.html>.

⁵¹¹ Java Ring Definition, Tech Target, <http://searchsoa.techtarget.com/definition/Java-Ring> (last visited Jan. 20, 2016).

⁵¹² Jakob Nielsen, *The Java Ring: A Wearable Computer*, Nielsen Norman Group (March 1, 1998), <https://www.nngroup.com/articles/javaring-wearable-computer/>.

wearables.⁵¹³ The Senior Java Developer Community Manager, Tori Wieldt commented on development options for wearables: “Why not use existing cheap technology to build your own wearable Java-powered device? Using Java allows you to use your existing skills, build infrastructure, and testing tools.”⁵¹⁴

(ii) Android competition and market harm from Java-based Android

369. Android has extended its presence from mobile phones and tablets into wearables. In 2015, Android captured approximately 17% unit share of the wearable device category. This has been projected to grow to nearly 40% by 2019 with a projected 173 million units shipped.⁵¹⁵ Today, Google’s Android-based wearables platform, Android Wear, is the basis of many smartwatches from large manufacturers including LG, Motorola, Huawei, Asus, and Sony.⁵¹⁶ The success of Android incorporating unlicensed Java API packages, in wearable shipments demonstrates the value of Java-based solutions in the wearable space because they are substitutes for the reasons I discuss above, and is an indication of the harm to Oracle’s potential market in the wearable device category due to Android.

370. Android’s entry into wearables directly harmed Oracle’s potential market in the recent case of Samsung’s selection of a platform for its smartwatch. Samsung is a long-time Java licensee, and Oracle had many discussions regarding licensing the Java platform Samsung smartwatch.⁵¹⁷ Ultimately, however, Oracle’s pursuit of a deal for a Java-based Samsung smartwatch was rejected when Samsung chose Google’s Android Wear platform instead.⁵¹⁸

⁵¹³ Tori Wieldt, *IoT: Wearables!*, The Java Source, Oracle (Aug. 20, 2014), https://blogs.oracle.com/java/entry/iot_wearables.

⁵¹⁴ Tori Wieldt, *Learn About Wearables and Java*, The Java Source, Oracle (Jan. 22, 2015), https://blogs.oracle.com/java/entry/wearables_and_java.

⁵¹⁵ Mark Sullivan, *IDC: Android Wear Market Share Will More Than Double by 2019*, VentureBeat (Sept. 14, 2015, 11:49am), <http://venturebeat.com/2015/09/14/idc-android-wear-market-share-will-more-than-double-by-2019/>.

⁵¹⁶ Android Wear Website. <https://www.android.com/wear/>

⁵¹⁷ OAGOOGL2000054847.

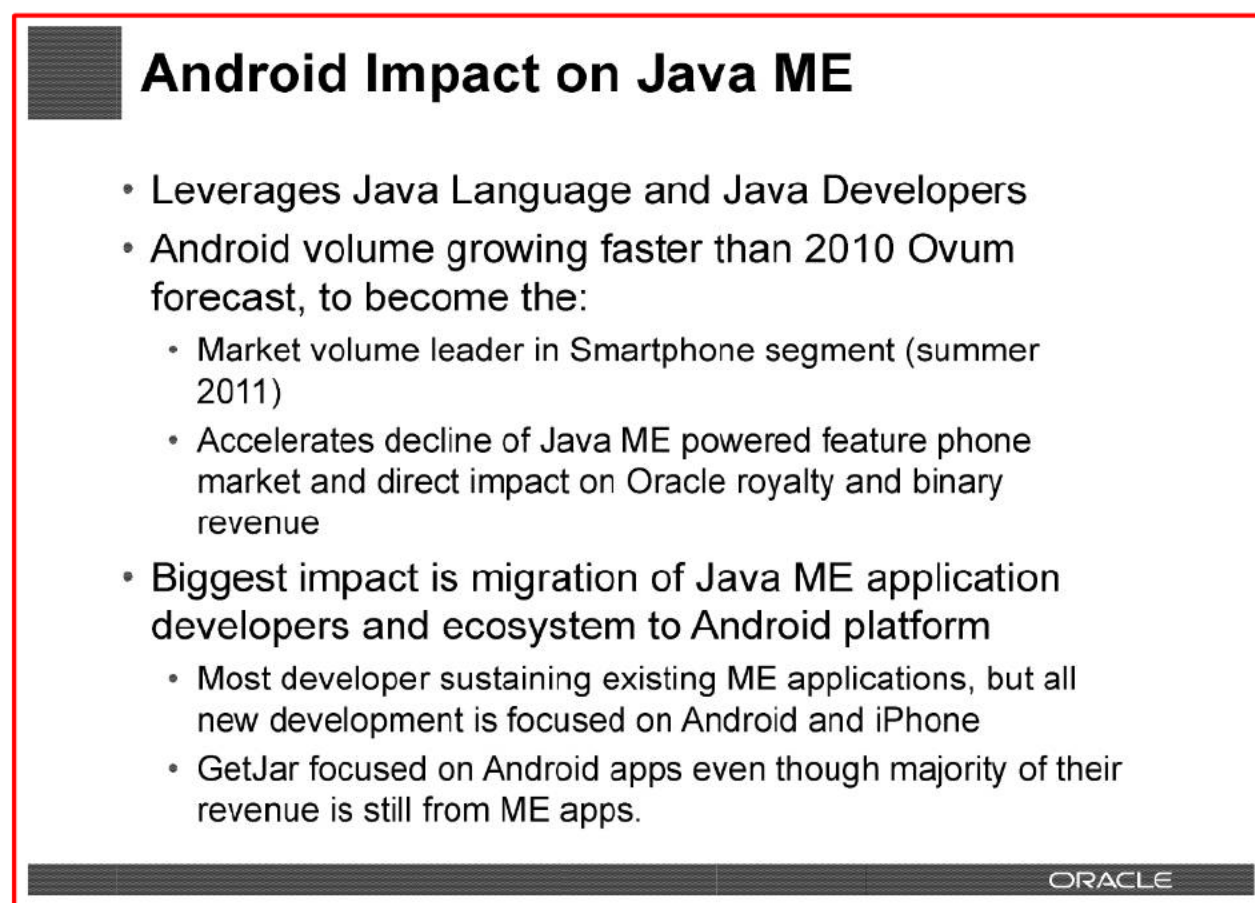
⁵¹⁸ Deposition of Michael Ringhofer, December 2, 2015. P. 83:6-10.

d) Harm to Oracle across the Java mobile development community

371. In addition to causing harm by impeding licensing sales in the mobile device category, Android's Java-based platform seeks to and does draw developers away from the Java platform. As I discuss throughout the report, Java is a network good – the more developers it attracts, the greater its value. When Java-based Android competes with Oracle for developers, it is harming Java's potential market for developers who write apps for the Java platform.

372. For example, an analysis of "Android Impact on Java ME platform" performed in 2011 analyzed the negative impact on Java's developer ecosystem. Figure 71 below shows the executive summary from this presentation.

Figure 71: "Android Impact on Java ME Platform (April 2011)"⁵¹⁹

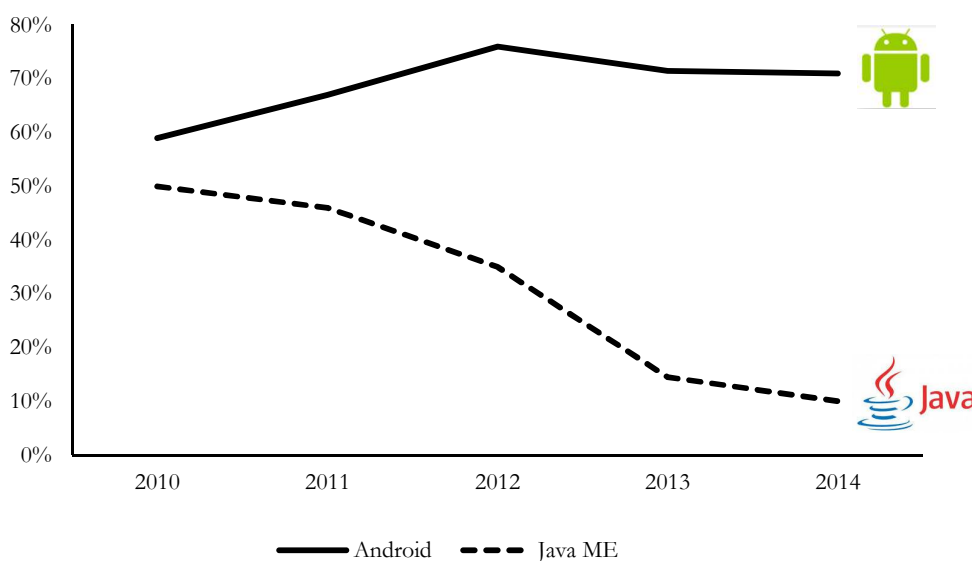


⁵¹⁹ OAGOOGL2007501106, at -1107.

373. The same presentation goes on to highlight the rapid adoption of the Android platform by mobile app developers, noting that in 2010 Android was the most-used mobile developer platform in favor of the Java platform. The analysis concludes that, “Android volume growth is the single biggest factor in migration of developers.”⁵²⁰

374. Additional contemporaneous industry data supports this conclusion. In 2008, Java-based Symbian and Java ME were the two most-used development platforms by mobile app developers.⁵²¹ Two years later, Android was the most popular platform, with roughly 60 percent of all mobile developers developing on Android.⁵²² The adoption of Android among developers appears to have impacted the relative attractiveness of Java ME. In 2011, Java ME had one of the highest reported abandonment rates, with 35% of developers who were currently using Java ME planning to drop the platform.⁵²³ Figure 72 below illustrates the divergence of developers using Android and Java mobile developer platforms.⁵²⁴

Figure 72: Percentage of developers using a platform (2010-2014)⁵²⁵



⁵²⁰ OAGOOGL2007501106, at -1114-15.

⁵²¹ Mobile Developer Economics 2010 and Beyond, Vision Mobile, p.5.

⁵²² Mobile Developer Economics 2010 and Beyond, Vision Mobile, p.5.

⁵²³ Developer Economics 2011, Vision Mobile (June 2011).

⁵²⁴ I understand from the report of Professor Doug Schmidt that there is a meaningful degree of overlap between Java ME and Java SE.

⁵²⁵ Developer Economics 2011, Vision Mobile (June 2011), p.16. Felix Richter, App Developers Increasingly Focus on Android and iOS, Statista (July 3, 2012), <http://www.statista.com/chart/424/app-developers-increasingly-focus-on-android-and-ios/>. Developer Economics Q1 2014, State of the Developer Nation, Vision Mobile (February 2014), p.16; Keystone Analysis. Note only Q1 and Q3 data was available for 2013 and only Q1 data for 2014.

375. This migration of developers was observed by leading technologists at Oracle. Mark Reinhold, Chief Architect of the Java Platform Group at Oracle described the impact of Android on Java's development community, "...[Android] was certainly a threat. It was certainly seen as a competing platform that [was] sufficiently java-like. It could draw away developers in the Java ecosystem."⁵²⁶

376. The impact of migration among developers from Java to Android is significant. As I explained above, the Java developer community is an important Oracle asset. Developer migration, whether reflected in a decline in the number of Java developers or slowed growth of platform adoption, is a clear example of harm to Oracle from Google's use of the Java API packages.

3) Summary of harm on mobile devices

377. Android is a mobile ecosystem first, and thus the most significant harm to Oracle is felt first across mobile device categories – mobile phones, tablets and e-readers. As I demonstrate above, Google's Java-based Android platform caused Oracle significant harm to the market for the Java platform. I find evidence of that harm in competition from Android and loss to Oracle across virtually all current and prospective Java licensees. That harm extends also to competition in the developer community – and as I have noted above through my discussion of network effects, the platform nature of Oracle's Java business model means that competition for Java application developers will redound to competition for Java licensing revenue. I also show that these mobile devices are experiencing substantial proliferation through this period, ushering a new era of mobile computing – this means that the opportunity lost through the introduction of competition against the Java platform by Java-based Android's is even more significant.

378. For these reasons, the harm that Oracle experiences in the mobile device category is more than enough to find that Google's copying is not a fair use based on a Factor 4 analysis. That being said, I also look at Android's effects on Oracle's market for other device categories. In the next sub-sections I review these categories.

4) Automotive

379. Over the last decade, cars have begun to incorporate connected computing features, including turn-by-turn mapping directions, media offerings like streaming audio and video and an array of other features. Dubbed, "connected cars," the automotive industry has become an important customer for application platform licensing. The Java platform has been licensed to automobile OEMs from the early days of this device category. Following its release in mobile phones, Google has sought to increase its

⁵²⁶ Deposition Transcript of Mark Reinhold, Aug. 5, 2011, 65: 4-6

device categories covered by Java-based Android, and connected cars have been a target of these efforts. In this section, I find that connected cars are an important device category in which Oracle experiences market harm from Android.

a) Market opportunity

380. Car manufacturers have been looking for different ways to incorporate new technologies into vehicles for decades.⁵²⁷ In 1996, GM began installing OnStar in select vehicles.⁵²⁸ OnStar provided vehicles with GPS tracking and wireless communications for the driver.⁵²⁹ As mobile technology became more sophisticated in the mid 2000's, cars began to sync with mobile devices.⁵³⁰

b) Competition and market harm from Java-based Android

381. Java provided the application platform for the first major connected car systems. In 2000, the Java platform was licensed to GM for its OnStar connected car platform.⁵³¹ OnStar provided users with GPS and also wireless communication capabilities to vehicles.⁵³² The OnStar service was in 1 million vehicles by the end of 2000.⁵³³

382. The 2004 JavaOne conference announced that Sun had reached an agreement that would put the Java platform in multiple BMW models. The BMW connected car would include a dashboard computer

⁵²⁷ In 1966 GM created the "Driver Aid, Information and Routing" (DAIR) initiative. This system provided vehicles with directions, accident reports and even road conditions. Deloitte University Press, <http://dupress.com/articles/Internet-of-things-iot-in-automotive-industry/#end-notes> (last visited January 20, 2016).

⁵²⁸ In 1966 GM created the "Driver Aid, Information and Routing" (DAIR) initiative. This system provided vehicles with directions, accident reports and even road conditions. Deloitte University Press, <http://dupress.com/articles/Internet-of-things-iot-in-automotive-industry/#end-notes> (last visited January 20, 2016).

⁵²⁹ In 1966 GM created the "Driver Aid, Information and Routing" (DAIR) initiative. This system provided vehicles with directions, accident reports and even road conditions. Deloitte University Press, <http://dupress.com/articles/Internet-of-things-iot-in-automotive-industry/#end-notes> (last visited January 20, 2016).

⁵³⁰ Deloitte University Press, <http://dupress.com/articles/Internet-of-things-iot-in-automotive-industry/#end-notes> (last visited January 20, 2016).

⁵³¹ THG Reporting Team, GM, Sun Agree to Make OnStar Java, Tom's Hardware (Oct. 17, 2000), <http://www.tomshardware.co.uk/gm,news-2420.html>.

⁵³² High Tech With A Personal Touch, OnStar, <https://web.archive.org/web/20000303011456/http://www.onstar.com/about/systems.htm> (Last visited January 20, 2016).

⁵³³ THG Reporting Team, GM, Sun Agree to Make OnStar Java, Tom's Hardware (Oct. 17, 2000), <http://www.tomshardware.co.uk/gm,news-2420.html>.

that controlled functions including: air conditioning, navigation, and entertainment in the BMW 1, 3, 5 and 6 series vehicles.⁵³⁴

383. More recently, the next generation of connected device OEMs and system developers have adopted the Java platform. Fuji Soft licensed the Java platform to develop Automotive Telematic systems for connected vehicles.⁵³⁵ In 2014, Oracle partnered with Toyota and Hitachi to “create some initial demos showing race car telemetry with a rich display and near-real-time performance to/from the cloud.”⁵³⁶ In 2015, Volkswagen said that “JavaFX in auto is a valid GUI solution for HMI systems,” and that it would be “easy to develop and deploy because OEMs could license the full [software] stack by just one vendor,” showing Java’s continued viability as a technology to be licensed to automotive OEMs.⁵³⁷

c) Android competition and market harm

384. In 2014, Google’s Java-based Android began competing with the Java platform by offering car manufacturers a version of Android called Android Auto.⁵³⁸

385. Volkswagen is a current Java licensee, but, despite Oracle’s efforts, opted to use Android in its automotive infotainment system instead of Java.⁵³⁹ Not only did Oracle lose the Volkswagen automotive infotainment opportunity to Android, but in the short time since launch, Java-based Android Auto has achieved substantial adoption by an array of other leading automobile OEMs.⁵⁴⁰ Google controls the applications that are installed on Android Auto, and “OEMs have no say in which Apps to include or exclude in both free and paid model. It is decided by Google alone.”⁵⁴¹ GM, Honda, Audi, Hyundai, and

⁵³⁴ Stephen Shankland, Sun Puts Java into Gear for Cars (June 29, 2004), <http://www.zdnet.com/article/sun-puts-java-into-gear-for-cars>.

⁵³⁵ OAGOOGL2000118005

⁵³⁶ OAGOOGL2000128485, at -8186.

⁵³⁷ OAGOOGL2000130663, at -0664.

⁵³⁸ Press Room, Open Automotive Alliance, <http://www.openautoalliance.net/#press>.

⁵³⁹ OAGOOGL2000055353; Deposition of Michael Ringhofer, December 2, 2015. p. 26:7-9; 110:9-12

⁵⁴⁰ Providers include : Abarth, Acura, Alfa Romeo, Audi, Bentley, Buick, Cadillac, Chevrolet, Chrysler, Citroen, Dodge, DS, Fiat, Ford, GMC, Holden, Honda, Hyundai, Infiniti, Jeep, Kenwood, Kia, Mahindra, Maserati, Mazda, Mitsubishi, Nissan, Opel, Peugeot, Pioneer, Ram, Renault, Seat, Skoda, Ssangyong, Subaru, Suzuki, Vauxhall, Volkswagen and Volvo Android Auto, Android, <https://www.android.com/auto> (last visited January 20, 2016).

⁵⁴¹ GOOG-00347724, at -7727.

NVidia joined Google to form the Open Automotive Alliance, which now consists of about 40 car OEMs and other partners.⁵⁴²

5) Internet of Things

386. Similar to the rise of connected cars, a new device category has emerged for “Internet of Things” devices. Internet of Things refers to a variety of user devices and services that have become Internet enabled and connected.⁵⁴³ These connected user devices are in line with traditional deployments of the Java platform for resource-constrained dedicated devices, and Oracle has been successful in licensing its platform to device manufacturers and providers in this category. As with the previous device categories, Android has expanded its mobile platform to compete with Java and has thereby imposed harm on Oracle in this category.

a) Market opportunity

387. According to IDC, the market for Internet of Things was worth \$656.8 billion in 2014 and is estimated to grow to \$1.7 trillion in 2020.⁵⁴⁴

b) Harm to Oracle from Java-based Android competition in Internet of Things devices

388. Oracle licenses Java to device manufacturers and providers of Internet of Things devices and services. The Java platform enables app developers to write applications for Internet of Things devices on various Java editions, including Java SE and Java ME.⁵⁴⁵ For example, Samsung licenses Java SE for use in SmartThings, its platform for Internet of Things devices.⁵⁴⁶

389. Google has also expanded its Java-based Android platform to meet the Internet of Things opportunity. Google’s offerings are though Project Brillo, a specialized instance of Android still based on the copied Java API packages.⁵⁴⁷ Google confirms its entry into Internet of Things in the following

⁵⁴² Aaron Souppouris, Google launches the Android-based Open Automotive Alliance with Audi, Honda, GM, and more, The Verge (Jan. 06, 2014), <http://www.theverge.com/2014/1/6/5279116/google-open-automotive-alliance-android-car-announcement>. Android Auto, Android, <https://www.android.com/auto/>.

⁵⁴³ Jeff Friesen, *Java ME 8 and the Internet of Things*, JavaWorld (Nov. 14, 2014, 12:18pm), <http://www.javaworld.com/article/2848210/java-me/java-me-8-and-the-Internet-of-things.html>.

⁵⁴⁴ Steven Norton, *Internet of Things Market to Reach \$1.7 Trillion by 2020: IDC*, The Wall Street Journal (June 2, 2015, 7:41am), <http://blogs.wsj.com/cio/2015/06/02/Internet-of-things-market-to-reach-1-7-trillion-by-2020-idc/>.

⁵⁴⁵ See Jeff Friesen, *Java ME 8 and the Internet of Things*, JavaWorld (Nov. 14, 2014, 12:18pm), <http://www.javaworld.com/article/2848210/java-me/java-me-8-and-the-Internet-of-things.html>.

⁵⁴⁶ Deposition of Michael Ringhofer, Dec. 2, 2015, p.21-23.

⁵⁴⁷ Deposition of Hiroshi Lockheimer, Dec. 8, 2015, p. 67-69.

manner, to “take that broad support base for the Android kernel and drivers and so on and make it possible for folks who are familiar with that technology to also build devices in the Internet of Things space.”⁵⁴⁸

390. By competing with Oracle for OEMs like Samsung and others, Google’s efforts harm the potential market for the Java platform licensing for Internet of Things devices because Android incorporates features of the Java platform but offers it for free and incentivizes potential Java licensees to select Android.

6) Voice over Internet Protocol (VoIP)

391. Voice over Internet Protocol (VoIP) is a group of technologies that deliver voice and multimedia data over the internet. A VoIP phone is a telephone set that uses VoIP to convert standard telephone audio into a digital format that can be transmitted over the Internet and also by converting incoming digital phone signals from the Internet into standard telephone audio.⁵⁴⁹ As with other device categories, Java has enjoyed significant licensing opportunities with VOIP phones, but it is now losing opportunities to Android. In this way, Oracle suffers harm to its VOIP device category revenue from Google’s Android product offerings.

392. The worldwide services market around VoIP is growing at a compound annual growth rate (CAGR) of 9.7%.⁵⁵⁰ The market is estimated to reach a subscriber base of 348.5 million and be worth \$136.8 billion by 2020.⁵⁵¹

393. Android has enabled a multitude of VoIP applications for both Android tablets and phones. Some commonly used third-party Android apps that enable VoIP calls include Skype, Tango and Viber.⁵⁵² Google itself has Google-owned services that provide VoIP functionality for Android devices. For

⁵⁴⁸ Deposition of Hiroshi Lockheimer, Dec. 8, 2015, p. 69.

⁵⁴⁹ See generally What is VoIP, VoIP-info.org, <http://www.VoIP-info.org/wiki/view/What+is+VOIP> (last visited Jan. 25, 2016).

⁵⁵⁰ *VoIP Services Market to Expand at 9.7% CAGR Till 2020 Thanks to Increasing Adoption in Residential and Corporate Sectors*, Transparency Market Research (July 5, 2015), <http://www.transparencymarketresearch.com/pressrelease/VoIP-services-market.htm>.

⁵⁵¹ *Global VoIP Services Market to be Worth US\$136.76 Billion by 2020: Transparency Market Research*, Business Wire (Jan. 15, 2015, 6:17am), <http://www.businesswire.com/news/home/20150115005322/en/Global-VoIP-Services-Market-Worth-US136.76-Billion> (last visited Jan. 25, 2016).

⁵⁵² Paul Nunal, *Best Android Apps for VoIP and SIP Calls*, Android Authority (May 22, 2012), <http://www.androidauthority.com/best-android-apps-VoIP-sip-calls-wi-fi-calling-Internet-calling-87396/>.

example, the Google Hangouts Dialer (previously Google Voice) is available for download from the Google Play store and allows users to place calls over the internet.⁵⁵³

394. Oracle observed a downward trend in licensing revenue from Cisco in part due to the launch of “Android-based VoIP multi-purpose tablet likely [carving] into” Cisco’s traditional VoIP phone customer base.⁵⁵⁴ Oracle has lost the “high end and low end market” of Cisco’s VoIP phones to Android because of Cisco’s “price sensitivity” and belief that it could get Java for free with Java-based Android deployments.⁵⁵⁵ Oracle is left with only mid-range “legacy” Cisco VoIP phones.⁵⁵⁶

7) Home entertainment

a) Blu-Ray

395. Oracle has historically licensed the Java platform for use in Blu-Ray technology. Blu-Ray is a successor to DVD technology with five times the storage capacity of a traditional DVD and simultaneously provides users with higher quality video.⁵⁵⁷ In 2011, Blu-Ray sales rose 69% to \$1.8 billion and the revenue from Blu-Ray discs increased 53% to \$2.3 billion.⁵⁵⁸

396. Java BDP, based off of Java ME, is the Java platform that is used for Blu-Ray. Java first emerged in Blu-Ray players in order to enhance menus and in-movie interactivity. Other potential applications for Java in Blu-Ray included gaming, new content downloading and online shopping.⁵⁵⁹ In 2010, Oracle signed a \$6.5 million license agreement with Sony for Java ME in Blu-ray players.⁵⁶⁰ In 2013, 100% of Blu-Ray players shipped with Java.⁵⁶¹

⁵⁵³ Hangouts Dialer—Call Phones, Apps, Google Play, <https://play.google.com/store/apps/details?id=com.google.android.apps.hangoutsdialer&hl=en>.

⁵⁵⁴ OAGOOGL2000003423, at -3453.

⁵⁵⁵ Deposition Transcript of Michael Ringhofer, Dec. 2 2015, p.127-129.

⁵⁵⁶ Deposition Transcript of Michael Ringhofer, Dec. 2 2015, p.127-129.

⁵⁵⁷ Blu-Ray Disk, Blu-ray, <http://www.blu-ray.com/info> (Last visited January 20, 2016); BD vs. DVD, Blu-ray, <http://www.blu-raydisc.com/en/aboutblu-ray/whatisblu-raydisc/bdvs.dvd.aspx> (last visited January 20, 2016).

⁵⁵⁸ Ben Fritz, *Home Entertainment Market Shrinking Slows as Blu-ray and Digital Help Make Up for DVD Decline*, Los Angeles Times (January 6, 2011), <http://latimesblogs.latimes.com/entertainmentnewsbuzz/2011/01/home-entertainment-market-shrinking-slower-as-blu-ray-and-digital-make-up-for-more-of-dvd-decline.html>.

⁵⁵⁹ Karlsson, Johan, *Blu-ray and Java*, Jayway (Dec. 11, 2009), <http://www.jayway.com/2009/12/11/blu-ray-and-java/>.

⁵⁶⁰ OAGOOGL0102403193, at -3216.

⁵⁶¹ Learn About Java Technology, Java, <https://web.archive.org/web/20131130231244/http://java.com/en/about> (Last visited January 20, 2016).

397. In 2010, Google released its Google TV platform, a version of Android 2.1 that aimed to “expand beyond phones and tablets” into home entertainment devices.⁵⁶² This effort proved successful. In 2012 Sony announced the release of a Blu-Ray player powered by Google TV, the NSZ-GP9.⁵⁶³ Google’s entry into Google TV and its subsequent application to Sony’s Blu-Ray player harmed Oracle’s licensing relationship with Sony because it appropriated a licensing opportunity that could have potentially been captured by Oracle. It also provided a signal to the market that could impair Oracle’s ability to license its Java platform to other Blu-Ray OEMs.

b) Television and set-top boxes

398. The competition between Oracle’s Java TV (the Java applications platform for TVs) and Google TV that I observe with Blu-Ray players extends to connected televisions and TV set-top boxes. Java TV offers OEMs a ready application platform to exploit these new capabilities. Google competes with Oracle in this category through its Google TV platform, which is built upon Java-based Android

399. Many new, high-end TVs and TV set-top boxes are Internet-enabled and license an application platform. Smart TVs gave viewers access to apps, the Internet, menus, and guides that were not available in the past. The value of the Smart TV market was \$86 billion in 2010 and is projected to increase to \$265 billion by the end of 2016.⁵⁶⁴

400. Java TV, designed for TVs and set-top boxes, includes an application platform created using Java ME.⁵⁶⁵ Java TV allowed developers to create applications, games, bonus content, guides and other interfaces.⁵⁶⁶ In 2006, David Reilly, a Sun Certified Java Programmer, wrote that the “Java TV API has the potential to revolutionize the Java landscape.”⁵⁶⁷ By 2014, 125 million TVs embodied Java TV.⁵⁶⁸

⁵⁶² Google TV, Android Central, <http://www.androidcentral.com/google-tv> (Last visited January 20, 2016).

⁵⁶³ Matthew Moskovciak, *Sony Keeps Google TV Alive with New Blu-ray Player, Set Top Box*, CNet (Jan. 9, 2012), <http://www.cnet.com/news/sony-keeps-google-tv-alive-with-new-blu-ray-player-set-top-box>.

⁵⁶⁴ Global Smart TV Market (2011 – 2016) Critical Capability, Use Case Analysis & Forecast By Accessories, Platforms, Middleware, Application & Geography, Markets and Markets (Jan. 2012), <http://www.marketsandmarkets.com/Market-Reports/smart-tv-market-455.html>.

⁵⁶⁵ OAGOOGL2000034001.

⁵⁶⁶ Java TV, Oracle, <http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/java/embedded/javame/java-tv/overview/index.html> (last visited January 20, 2016).

⁵⁶⁷ David Reilly, *Java Coming to a TV Near You!*, Java Coffee Break (June 5, 2006), <http://www.javacoffeebreak.com/articles/javatv>.

⁵⁶⁸ Learn About Java Technology, Java, <https://web.archive.org/web/20141101234107/http://java.com/en/about> (last visited January 20, 2016).

401. As I discuss above, Google TV was released in 2010 as a platform for Blu-Ray players, as well as TVs. Google announced partnership with a series of OEMs, including Intel, Sony and Logitech.⁵⁶⁹ In 2014, Google redubbed Google TV as “Android TV” and expanded its offering and the degree of competition with Java TV. Android TV is an extension of the Android mobile platform.⁵⁷⁰ Android TV was released as a part of its Android 4.4 “Kit Kat” release.⁵⁷¹ Android TV now is licensed by Sony, Vision/Phillips and Sharp.⁵⁷²

402. Oracle’s Michael Ringhofer described Oracle’s losses to Android in the Smart TV market: “So Samsung, LG, Sony, Sharp and Panasonic, we’re now speaking in general.... Obviously these are just a handful of some of the larger names that I queried upon and talked to the team—that we have lost opportunities to each and every one of these in the Smart TV or television space to Android.”⁵⁷³

403. Oracle faced similar harm from Android TV in the set-top box category. Alticast and Coship are two set-top box OEMs that originally licensed the Java platform. In both cases, Oracle faced competition from Google offerings and suffered losses of licensing revenue to Google. Contemporaneous documents describe this replacement with Alticast: “Alticast has indicated...that they have Android and HTML5 solutions ready for the market and are prepared to migrate their licensees to these solutions.”⁵⁷⁴ A similar harm occurred in the Coship account: “Coship saw the fast adoption of Android in the STB [Set top box]/Media market and they had to focus on Android based solution to meet the requirement of their customer.”⁵⁷⁵

404. These examples demonstrate that Google caused harm to Oracle’s potential market for the Java platform in the TV and set-top box market.

⁵⁶⁹ Industry Leaders Announce Open Platform to Bring Web to TV, Google, <http://googlepress.blogspot.com/2010/05/industry-leaders-announce-open-platform.html> (Last viewed January 20, 2016).

⁵⁷⁰ Richard Lawler, Android TV will be in Sony, Sharp and Phillips Next Year, Engadget (June 25, 2014), <http://www.engadget.com/2014/06/25/android-tv-is-coming-to-sony-sharp-and-philips-tvs-next-year>.

⁵⁷¹ Richard Lawler, Android TV will be in Sony, Sharp and Phillips Next Year, Engadget (June 25, 2014), <http://www.engadget.com/2014/06/25/android-tv-is-coming-to-sony-sharp-and-philips-tvs-next-year>.

⁵⁷² Richard Lawler, Android TV will be in Sony, Sharp and Phillips Next Year, Engadget (June 25, 2014), <http://www.engadget.com/2014/06/25/android-tv-is-coming-to-sony-sharp-and-philips-tvs-next-year>.

⁵⁷³ Michael Ringhofer Depo at p. 113-114.

⁵⁷⁴ OAGOOGL2000066068.

⁵⁷⁵ OAGOOGL2000077924.

c) Gaming

405. The gaming device category includes mobile applications and consoles. Sun was an early leader in licensing the Java platform for a variety of gaming environments and form factors. As with other device categories, Google has built off its Android mobile application platform (which copies the 37 Java API packages and substitutes for the Java platform as an applications platform across different kinds of devices) to enter gaming to compete and attempt to displace Java.

406. In 2015, the total gaming market was estimated to reach \$91.95 billion, of which \$30.3 billion along comes from mobile games (another \$26.4 billion is captured by consoles).⁵⁷⁶

407. Java has a long history of enabling gaming. At the 2001 JavaOne Conference, gaming companies, Sega and Digital Bridges demonstrated games on Motorola phones that were running on the Java platform.⁵⁷⁷ In 2003, Sun created the “Game Technologies Group” to develop Java technology for the gaming industry, specifically focused on the future of online games. At the time, Sun’s Chief Gaming Officer, Chris Melissinos, reported that “there is no other company that can do it [allow developers to take advantage of multiple platforms at once] but Sun.”⁵⁷⁸

408. Java’s early success in gaming continued through recent years, when Android sought to enter the gaming space via the Xbox gaming console. In 2012, Xbox announced the release of “SmartGlass,” which allows Xbox users to enhance their experience by turning their mobile device into an additional screen or controller for gaming.⁵⁷⁹ All mobile devices (tablets and phones) that operate on Android 4.0 or higher are compatible with Xbox SmartGlass.⁵⁸⁰ In 2015, gaming company Razer announced that it was developing an Android-powered gaming console called the Razer Forge TV.⁵⁸¹ The Razer Forge TV also give users access to Google Play, where Android users can download apps.

⁵⁷⁶ John Gaudiosi, *Mobile Game Revenues Set to Overtake Console Games in 2015*, Fortune (Jan. 15, 2015), <http://fortune.com/2015/01/15/mobile-console-game-revenues-2015>.

⁵⁷⁷ Chris Wright, *A Brief History of Mobile Games: 2002 - Wake up and smell the coffee*, Pocket Gamer (Dec. 26, 2008), <http://www.pocketgamer.biz/feature/10705/a-brief-history-of-mobile-games-2002-wake-up-and-smell-the-coffee>.

⁵⁷⁸ Janice Heiss, *Java Technology Gets in the Game: A Conversation with Chief Gaming Officer, Chris Melissinos*, Oracle (March 2004), <http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/articles/java/games-137515.html>.

⁵⁷⁹ Casey Chan, *What is SmartGlass?*, GizModo (June 4, 2012), <http://gizmodo.com/5915553/what-is-xbox-smartglass>.

⁵⁸⁰ Introducing Xbox SmartGlass, Xbox, <http://www.xbox.com/en-US/smartglass> (last viewed January 21, 2016).

⁵⁸¹ Ingrid Lunden, *Razer Unveils Its \$100 Android-Powered Gaming Console, Razer Forge TV*, TechCrunch (Jan. 6, 2015), <http://techcrunch.com/2015/01/06/razer-forge-nabu-x-osvr>.

409. The gaming category – whether mobile or console – presents a very similar pattern to what I have observed in each of the device categories examined. Gaming exhibited early and continuous Java licensing in a growing and important category. In recent years, building off its mobile success, Android offers a competing application platform and begins to harm Oracle’s Java platform offerings.

8) GPS systems

410. Global Positioning Systems (GPS) technology provides the backbone for an array of technologies that rely on mapping, movement tracking and other movement and location-based applications in the mobile space. The market for GPS is quite robust, with an estimated \$26.4 billion in revenue this year.⁵⁸² As I have observed across each device category, Oracle has a history of licensing the Java platform to GPS devices. In recent years, Android has offered competing GPS application platform solutions that negatively impact the potential market for Oracle licensing because Java-based Android substitutes for the Java platform in this category.

411. Java is used in many consumer GPS-enabled devices including Garmin. Garmin is a Java licensee and leading GPS device OEM. It “develops consumer, aviation, outdoor, fitness, and marine technologies” for GPS with products that include fitness-tracking watches⁵⁸³ and GPS for cars.⁵⁸⁴ Garmin’s GPS Tool “is a Java Swing application that allows Garmin GPS users to connect their units to computers and use the Swing application as a tool for downloading and visualizing [GPS-enabled] waypoint, track, and route data on a global scale.”⁵⁸⁵

412. Android supports GPS-enabled devices that compete with Garmin’s Java-licensed devices and applications, thereby harming Oracle’s potential market. For example, there are many GPS-based applications developed for Android devices that are available for download on the Google Play store.⁵⁸⁶ Sales of Garmin’s most popular line of GPS devices — GPS for vehicle dashboards — fell by 6% in 2013 from the previous year as more drivers use smartphones (including Android) for their navigational

⁵⁸² Global GPS Market: Products (Marine, Aviation, Automotive, Outdoor/Fitness & GPS Enabled Smart Phones), Applications (Navigation, Machine Control & Logistics Tracking) & Geography (2011-2016), Markets and Markets, <http://www.marketsandmarkets.com/Market-Reports/global-GPS-market-and-its-applications-142.html> (last visited Jan. 25, 2016).

⁵⁸³ Running, Garmin, <https://buy.garmin.com/en-US/US/into-sports/running/cIntoSports-cRunning-p1.html> (last visited Jan. 25, 2016).

⁵⁸⁴ Automotive, Garmin, www.garmin.com/en-US/explore/ontheroad (last visited Jan. 25, 2016).

⁵⁸⁵ Garmin GPS Tool, SourceForge, <http://sourceforge.net/projects/garminpstool/> (last visited Jan. 25, 2006).

⁵⁸⁶ See, e.g., Joe Hindy, *13 Best GPS App and Navigation App Options for Android*, Android Authority (May 1, 2015), <http://www.androidauthority.com/best-gps-app-and-navigation-app-for-android-357870/>.

needs.⁵⁸⁷ Given that Android platform GPS-enabled applications compete with Java-licensed GPS devices, I find that the Android platform's GPS applications cause harm to Oracle's potential market for GPS device licensing.

9) Vending machines

413. Throughout the early 2000s, technological advances influenced the vending machine industry in a significant way, from the goods that could be distributed via vending machine to the method by which customers could purchase these goods. Between 1999 and 2007, the volume of sales through vending machines in the United States increased from \$36.6 billion to \$47.5 billion, but decreased to \$42.2 billion in 2010.⁵⁸⁸ As technology has evolved, along with the ubiquity of credit cards and smartphones, vending machines have had to advance, as well. New vending machines, called smart vending machines, allow for this functionality. Frost & Sullivan, a market research firm, predicts there were 500,000 to 700,000 smart vending machines in 2012 and estimates there may be as many as 2 million by 2018.⁵⁸⁹

414. As early as 1999, Java has been incorporated into vending machines, giving them the capability to be monitored and controlled via the internet.⁵⁹⁰ The Java-controlled Pepsi Machine, for example, allowed users to pay using pre-paid cards that could be used at the vending machine, instead of dollar bills or coins. This technology also allowed types of available soda to be monitored; customers could see if the machine had what they wanted and the vending company could monitor to know when a refill is necessary.⁵⁹¹ One way that Java can be used in vending machines is through promotions or marketing campaigns. Some vending machines may have quiz questions or simple games, written in Java, which can result in a customer getting a good for free.⁵⁹²

⁵⁸⁷ Jessica Leber, A Shrinking Garmin Navigates the Smartphones Storm, Technology Review (Mar. 8, 2013), <http://www.technologyreview.com/news/511786/a-shrinking-garmin-navigates-the-smartphone-storm/>.

⁵⁸⁸ *Vending Machines - Total Sales Volume in the U.S. from 1999 to 2010 (in billion U.S. dollars)*, Statista, <http://www.statista.com/statistics/200646/total-sales-volume-of-vending-machines-in-the-us-since-1999> (last visited January 26, 2016).

⁵⁸⁹ Olga Kharif, *Vending Machines Get Smart to Accommodate the Cashless*, Bloomberg Business (Aug. 29, 2013), <http://www.bloomberg.com/bw/articles/2013-08-29/vending-machines-get-smart-to-accommodate-the-cashless>.

⁵⁹⁰ Yang-Byung Park, Jun-Su Yoo, *A heuristic for the inventory management of smart vending machine systems*, Omnia Science (Aug. 2012), <http://www.jiem.org/index.php/jiem/article/viewFile/587/302>.

⁵⁹¹ Webster, R.W., Ross, P.W., Bailey, T.M., Conrad, S.M., Fiorill, M.J., Flinchbaugh, J.M., & Velkly, E.A. (1999). *Controlling a Java Enabled Pepsi® Vending Machine Over the World Wide Web*. IECON Proceedings of the 25th Annual Conference of the IEEE, 1(29), 86–90.

⁵⁹² *Vendron Socket API (SDK)*, Silkron, http://www.silkron.com/smart_vending_sdk (last visited January 26, 2016).

415. In 2011, in China, Ubox created a vending machine app that allows users to make purchases from the machine with their mobile devices that are supported by iOS, Android or Java. The physical vending machine only had one button, and all other commands were performed from a mobile device. Mobile users also received a 10% discount on all vended products.⁵⁹³

416. The positive licensing opportunity in vending machines coupled with the Android's platform efforts to supplant Java's historical and current licensing revenue provides evidence of harm to Oracle's potential market for vending machine device licensing.

10) Printers

417. The global printing hardware market was worth approximately \$83 billion in 2015.⁵⁹⁴ Java was licensed by printer hardware manufacturers including Canon, Fuji Xerox, Kyocera DS, and Lexmark.⁵⁹⁵

418. In 2013, Google added a native printing feature to its Android v4.4 "KitKat" SDK, thus entering the market for printers.⁵⁹⁶ Printer manufacturers such as Hewlett-Packard and Epson have supported native Android printing in their printers.⁵⁹⁷ This has caused harm to Oracle's potential market for printers. For example, Oracle was working to license Java to Lexmark, a manufacturer of printers, but Lexmark decided not to license Java and "went with Android" instead.⁵⁹⁸ The Google Play store has a Lexmark printing application available for download to enable Android users to print directly from their phones to a Lexmark printer.⁵⁹⁹

419. Accordingly, Android's entry into printers and competition for accounts like Lexmark has harmed the share of Java-licensed printers, and caused Oracle harm to its potential market in the printer device category.

⁵⁹³ *Ubox Makes Mobile Vending Machines a Reality in China*, Retail Customer Experience (Sep. 5, 2011), <http://www.retailcustomerexperience.com/news/ubox-makes-mobile-vending-machines-a-reality-in-china>.

⁵⁹⁴ *Printing in the US: Market Research Report*, IBISWorld (Dec. 2015), <http://www.ibisworld.com/industry/default.aspx?indid=433>.

⁵⁹⁵ OAGOOGL0100167800; *See also* OAGOOGL2000003711; OAGOOGL2000034001.

⁵⁹⁶ James A. Martin, *Epson Printers Now Support Native Android Print on "KitKat" Devices*, CIO (May 19, 2014, 8:43am), <http://www.cio.com/article/2369987/mobile-apps/epson-printers-now-support-native-android-print-on-kitkat-devices.html>.

⁵⁹⁷ James A. Martin, *Epson Printers Now Support Native Android Print on "KitKat" Devices*, CIO (May 19, 2014, 8:43am), <http://www.cio.com/article/2369987/mobile-apps/epson-printers-now-support-native-android-print-on-kitkat-devices.html>.

⁵⁹⁸ Deposition Transcript of Donald Smith, Nov. 20, 2015, 121:3-6 ("Lexmark is an example. They're a printer company, and we were pursuing a license with them, and they went with Android.").

⁵⁹⁹ Lexmark Mobile Printing, Google Play, <https://play.google.com/store/apps/details?id=com.lexmark.print&hl=en>.

11) Household appliances

420. The market for household appliances in the U.S. alone includes over 3 million air conditioners and 50 million major household appliances were shipped annually, between 2005 and 2012.⁶⁰⁰

421. Oracle was in negotiations with many appliances OEMs for licensing the Java platform. For example, Oracle was in discussions to integrate Java with semiconductor chips made by Freescale for household products.⁶⁰¹ Sun was also in negotiations to integrate on other appliances such as GE appliances and Samsung air conditioners.⁶⁰²

422. The Android platform competes with Java to provide an application platform for household appliances devices. Android has been showcased on microwaves, refrigerators, air conditioners, ovens, washers, and dryers.⁶⁰³ These appliances often connect to smartphones or access the Play Store, increasing Google's reach to appliances. Household appliances are a significant market opportunity and one in which Java has historically secured licensing revenue. The Android platform and apps in its Google Play Store are competitive to the Java platform and cause harm to Oracle's potential market in the household appliance device category.

12) Cameras

423. Even with the advent of smartphones with camera capabilities, digital cameras remain a material, if less popular, consumer electronic good.⁶⁰⁴

424. Java's flexible platform for embedded devices was well poised for the digital camera market.⁶⁰⁵ In 2014, Samsung and Nikon, major players in the camera market, launched models of digital cameras running Android. These digital cameras have WI-FI capabilities and access to Google Play Store and

⁶⁰⁰ *Total Unit Shipments of Major Kitchen and Laundry Appliances* in the U.S. from 2005 to 2017 (in million units)*, Statista, <http://www.statista.com/statistics/220086/unit-shipments-of-major-kitchen-and-laundry-appliances-in-the-us> (last visited: February 5, 2016); *Air Conditioners Shipments in the U.S. from 2001 to 2014 (in millions)*, Statista, <http://www.statista.com/statistics/220357/manufactured-shipments-of-unitary-air-conditioners> (last visited February 5, 2016).

⁶⁰¹ Deposition Transcript of Donald Smith, Nov. 20, 2015, 88: 17-23; *Products*, NXP, <http://www.nxp.com/products/products:PCPRODCAT> (last visited February 5, 2016).

⁶⁰² OAGOOGL2000062898 at 2899. OAGOOGL2000128379 at 8380. OAGOOGL2000023783.

⁶⁰³ Sascha Segan, *Android Appliances at CES 2013*, January 11, 2013 (<http://www.pcmag.com/article2/0,2817,2414179,00.asp>), accessed January 27, 2016; GOOG-00387521.

⁶⁰⁴ *Global sales of digital cameras by selected region in 2009 and 2010 (in million units)*, Statista, <http://www.statista.com/statistics/270014/global-sales-of-digital-cameras-by-selected-region/>.

⁶⁰⁵ Deposition of Donald Smith, (Nov. 20, 2015), at pg. 166-67

social media applications. The Nikon Coolpix S810c, with a price tag of \$349.95, was Nikon's second attempt at an Android based camera.

425. Oracle faced direct competition from Android for licensing Java in the camera market. One example of this is a lost deal with Nikon, a popular camera manufacturer. Meeting minutes from an Oracle meeting with Nikon confirm Oracle's efforts to negotiate and enter a Java platform license with Nikon for cameras. While Nikon seems to understand the value in Java, "Good thing is Hamaura-san [Nikon] understands Java is better than Android, considering performance, reliability, number of libraries, asset portability, etc." but they are releasing a model with Android "just because Android is one trend".⁶⁰⁶ Finally, Oracle's Gen Shimada summarizes the meeting as, "Java is not used in Digital Camera today. But Nikon released one model based on Android the other day. But we hope to let them use Java."⁶⁰⁷

426. The lost Nikon license is one example of potential harm to Oracle in the camera market due to Google's copying of the Java API packages in Android. On this basis, and as a result of the general competition presented to the Java platform for cameras by the Android platform, I find that Oracle's potential market for camera devices has been harmed by Google's Java-based Android platform.

13) Payment terminals and point of sale systems

427. Point of sale terminals are payment terminals that accept some form of electronic payment such as credit cards. Every store that accepts credit cards requires a point of sale terminal. The point of sale market was over \$36 billion dollars in 2013.⁶⁰⁸

428. Java was well poised to enter this market. A committee, including retailers like JCPenney and The Home Depot, was formed to standardize Java on point of sale terminals in 1997.⁶⁰⁹ Now, Android is ubiquitous in the point of sale systems market, enabling many apps to replace the traditional point of sale terminals.⁶¹⁰

⁶⁰⁶ OAGOOGL2000059827.

⁶⁰⁷ OAGOOGL2000059827.

⁶⁰⁸ *Point-of-Sale Terminals Market to Log 11.6% CAGR to 2020; Mobile POS Terminals to Show Stellar Growth: Transparency Market Research* (<http://www.prnewswire.com/news-releases/point-of-sale-terminals-market-to-log-116-cagr-to-2020-mobile-pos-terminals-to-show-stellar-growth-transparency-market-research-522400211.html>), Accessed January 27, 2016.

⁶⁰⁹ Rick Cook, Java jazzes point of sale systems with new APIs, (<http://www.javaworld.com/article/2071277/java-se/java-jazzes-point-of-sale-systems-with-new-apis.html>) Accessed January 27, 2016.

⁶¹⁰ Samples of those apps are found at <http://www.posandro.com/>, <http://www.prweb.com/releases/accupos-point-of-sale/android-point-of-sale-pos/prweb9308542.htm>, <https://www.srpointofsale.com/products/hardware/>, and other websites.

429. Recently, Coca Cola's North American vendors have begun installing their machines with Android Pay; Coca Cola has announced that it will have 100,000 machines enabled with this technology by the end of 2015. Google's Director of Business Development, Spencer Spinnell announced that this brings the total count of merchants that allow customers to use Android Pay to over 700,000 in the United States. Derek Myers, of Google, believes that even though mobile payments are only responsible for a small percentage of Coca Cola's revenues currently, he expects a 20% increase by 2020.⁶¹¹

430. While the market has shifted to mobile systems based on Android and iOS, Java being pushed out of the mobile space has caused it to lose in the point of sale market as well. I find, then, that the prevalence of the Android platform in payment and point of sale markets competing with the Java platform results in harm to Oracle's potential market in this device category.

C. Widespread use

431. In Section VI, I describe the importance of intellectual property and copyright protection. Particularly, I outline the well-accepted principle that protection of copyrighted creative works is required to both incentivize innovation and ensure the efficient distribution and consumption of copyrighted works. I further understand Factor 4 of the fair use analysis asks us to consider what would be the impact upon both the Java platform and its derivatives if the copying in this matter were to become widespread.⁶¹²

432. In this section, I have outlined many significant harms already suffered by Oracle from Google's unlicensed copying of the Java API packages. I further have described the potential market harm to Oracle across approximately 16 product markets in which Oracle monetizes its Java platform. This case may be unique in that Google's copying is already remarkably widespread because of the reach and ambition of Google. Google has ported its copying throughout Java's vast ecosystem and looks to harm Oracle's prospects in all 16 product markets, most notably through the reduction of Oracle's mobile phone monetization prospects.

433. That being said, applying the widespread use test to this analysis would increase the market harm to Oracle. It would invite all who currently license the Java platform to copy the Java API packages without remuneration. For example, the economic incentives of current and significant Oracle customers such as Microsoft and Amazon to continue paying for a commercial Java license would be removed.

⁶¹¹ Jay Moye, *Android Pay, Coca-Cola Vending Machines Link Payment and Loyalty*, Coca Cola (May 28, 2015), <http://www.coca-colacompany.com/stories/android-pay-coca-cola-vending-machines-link-payment-and-loyalty>.

⁶¹² See, e.g., *Sony Corp. v. Universal City Studios, Inc.*, 464 U.S. 417, 450 (1984).

Further, the impediments that the Java sales team has run up against in competing with Java-based Android would be even more pronounced, across more product categories, further exacerbating the harm.

434. Unauthorized widespread copying of a creative work also makes it difficult to conceive of a situation in which the incentive to invest in such creative work would not be dramatically reduced, or removed entirely.

435. Thus, unauthorized widespread use would not only create greater harm to Oracle, it could reduce the overall benefits to the technology community. Furthermore, given the wide-ranging adoption of Java-enabled products, impeded advancement of the Java platform would have ripple effects on users worldwide.

D. Response to Dr. Astrachan's Factor 4 analysis

436. I conclude that based on the substantial and wide-ranging harm to the markets for licensed Java, Google's copying of the Java API packages is not a fair use under Factor 4. Dr. Astrachan's analysis of the effect of the use on the potential market for Java API packages lacks any economic basis or analysis. I describe and respond to each of his arguments in turn below.

1) Market substitution

437. Dr. Astrachan states, "Android is not a substitute for Java SE because that Java platform targets a substantially different market." Dr. Astrachan's provides no discussion of what the different markets are, nor does he describe why the markets are different. Furthermore, he provides no economic rationale for a question that is fundamentally economic in nature. I have discussed above the many reasons why, from an economic perspective, Google's use supersedes licensed Java's use, thereby causing significant harm to the market for the Java platform. (See Section IX above).

2) Impact of OpenJDK

438. Dr. Astrachan contends that any harm to the market for the Java API packages "would have come about as a result of Sun/Oracle's own actions." Dr. Astrachan goes on to describe that Sun created an open-source version of Java SE in 2007. He then describes the recent announcement by Google of its intention to use the OpenJDK versions of the 37 API packages, and finally asserts, "Although Google did not take the OpenJDK license until 2015, there is no technical reason it could not have done so in the 2007/2008 timeframe as well."⁶¹³ I observe that Dr. Astrachan bounds his opinion to the technical

⁶¹³ Opening Expert Report of Dr. Owen Astrachan on Technical Issues Relating to Fair Use, January 8, 2016. P. 106-107.

viability of OpenJDK. I understand Oracle's technical expert, Professor Doug Schmidt will respond from a technical perspective, which is beyond my area of expertise. I will however discuss the economic ramifications of Dr. Astrachan's proposed counterfactual scenario, and explain why the use of OpenJDK would have likely been unacceptable to a company's in Google's position in 2007/2008 when it was developing and launching Android.

439. In this section I analyze from an economic perspective the commercial reasonableness of OpenJDK to Google at the time of Android's development and launch. First, I consider Google's actual behavior, which was to intentionally *reject* the use of OpenJDK in 2007, 2008, and each of the years since. Assuming Google seeks to maximize long-term profits, this suggests that OpenJDK was not, and has not been, an economically favorable choice for Google. Second, I consider the impact that eight years of unlicensed use of the Java API packages has had on Google's competitive position in the mobile ecosystem. I find that Google is in a significantly stronger position today than it was in 2007. Google no longer desperately needs to build a mobile platform within a critical time window. Instead Google's need to forge partnerships with OEMs, carriers, and a developer community has been replaced by market dominance, ecosystem control, and huge profits.

a) Google's actual behavior

440. The simplest evidence that OpenJDK was not a commercially reasonable option for Google is the fact that Google did not use it. As an economist, I think about the decisions companies make in light of the alternatives they are considering. In 2007, when Google made the choice to commercially release Android, OpenJDK had been announced as an available option. Google did not choose to use OpenJDK for Android, which means they viewed the alternative, copying the Java API packages without a license, to be more economically beneficial. As time went on and Google was faced with litigation over its use of the Java API packages, it still chose to not use OpenJDK. In May 2012, a jury found that Google infringed Oracle's copyrights in the Java platform. In May 2014, the Federal Circuit reinstated the jury's verdict and ruled that Google had copied the Java API packages without a necessary license. Since that ruling, Google has continued to exploit the Java API packages in its Android platform without abatement or recognition of the Federal Circuit's ruling.⁶¹⁴ Even after these rulings, Google failed to use OpenJDK.

⁶¹⁴ As opposed to Google's copying, Sun and Oracle have a long history of partners accepting licenses for commercial purposes, as I describe throughout this report. In other instances where firms have failed to comply with the Java platform's licensing requirements, Sun and Oracle have enforced their rights, as was the case with Microsoft and its unlicensed use of the Java platform. See, *Sun Microsystems, Inc. v. Microsoft Corporation*, U.S. District Court, Northern District of California, San Jose, Case Number 97-CV-20884.

This again suggests that Google viewed there to be significant costs or potential downsides to using OpenJDK. And that OpenJDK was not a commercially reasonable option for Google.⁶¹⁵

b) Google's position: then versus now

441. By limiting his opinion to technical feasibility (which I understand is addressed by Professor Schmidt in his report), Dr. Astrachan fails to address essential competitive and economic context and evidence. As described above, the timing of Google's entry into the mobile application platform market was critical. Google faced a paradigm shift in user behavior that threatened the very core of its highly profitable search advertising revenue model and intense time-pressure to secure share in a market against formidable competitors old and new. Google's ability to defend its search business and control its mobile destiny depended on its ability to attract OEMs, carriers, and a developer community. Google's place in the ecosystem is dramatically different today. Put simply, it is nonsensical to compare Google's choice to copy instead of using OpenJDK in such starkly different competitive and market contexts. Recall from my discussion above the structure of Android's Purchase Agreement, the Android Inc. team was expressly incentivized to secure a partnership with a wireless carrier quickly.⁶¹⁶

442. I understand from Ms. Murray that there are significant downstream implications of using GPLv2 (whether or not with the Classpath Exception) code. Specifically, it is my understanding that GPLv2 code "infects" software that incorporates GPLv2 code, and impacts the downstream user's ability to keep additional code proprietary. Google's initial strategy of building a hardware-agnostic mobile application platform dictated cooperation with a number of different mobile device manufacturers and carriers. I understand that Ms. Murray's report states that these key partners would have been forced to face the undesirable business risk of subjecting proprietary source code to the open source requirements of the GPL-related licenses of the OpenJDK, thereby severely limiting OEM and carrier ability to differentiate. And Google apparently understood these risks, as discussed in Ms. Murray's report and further below.

443. Additionally, I understand that regardless of the complicated legal and technical interpretations of GPLv2 (whether or not with the Classpath Exception), I understand that Ms. Murray found that as of 2007, key mobile partners on which Google depended were unlikely to use GPLv2 software because of negative perceptions. In economic terms, the probability of Google securing not one, but many working relationships with OEMs and carriers who were known to be averse to GPLv2 code (whether or not with the Classpath Exception), is very low.

⁶¹⁵ Indeed, internal Google documents reveal that Google very intentionally rejected the OpenJDK for use in Android. *See, e.g.*, TX 230 (dated Aug 11, 2007).

⁶¹⁶ GOOGLE-00303922, at -3929, -4000.

444. Google understood this dynamic, as expressed in a May 2007 email from Andy Rubin to Google's Executive Management Group (EMG):

We do not believe phones can be built using GPL software. OEMs and carriers need the ability to differentiate, and therefore cannot be required to open source their proprietary features (GPL's "copyleft" requires this). This is the trick Sun and other such as Real Networks use to lure licenses into a direct license (aka dual license). It is fraught with problems, such as requiring any community contributions to also be dual licensed. That means community development is monetized by Sun!⁶¹⁷

A few months later, Rubin again articulated the concern with GPL and participation from OEMs and carriers, in an email to other Android leads:

The problem with GPL in embedded systems is that it's viral, and there is no way (for example) for OEMs or Carriers to differentiate by adding proprietary works. We are building a platform where the entire purpose is to let people differentiate on top of it.⁶¹⁸

Similarly, in his deposition Rubin stated that GPL-related was unattractive to platform developers, using game developers as an example:

So anybody that puts software on top of GPL, for example, if Electronic Arts writes a game on top of a cell phone that has a GPL, in it, that forces Electronic Arts to Open Source their game, which obviously, you know, they can't do because they're a business.⁶¹⁹

445. These statements from Google – made at the time it was actually making the decision to reject using OpenJDK in Android – show that using the open-source Java platform was untenable. This comports with Ms. Murray's opinions which explain the general industry environment and resistance among mobile industry participants to GPL-related licensing. Instead, Google chose to copy the Java API packages and cemented its cooperation with critical partners, securing scale and control in the emerging mobile market before its short window of opportunity closed.

446. Today Google sits in a very different position. Google's unlicensed use of the Java API packages for the past eight years has significantly altered Google's bargaining power vis-a-vis its industry partners. Google has substantially greater bargaining power with OEMs, carriers, and developers because of its scale (80%+ market share in terms of shipments). Further, Google has significant profits from Android

⁶¹⁷ GOOGLE-26-00005730.

⁶¹⁸ GOOGLE-02-00020474.

⁶¹⁹ Andrew Rubin Individual Deposition Transcript July 27, 2011, p. 14:1-5.

with which it can incentivize partners through revenue share agreements. This is in stark contrast to Google's position in 2007, when it had zero share. Back then, Google needed urgently to forge relationships and build its presence in the mobile market before getting shut out by competitors such as Apple and Microsoft.

3) Oracle's alleged tolerance of other unlicensed Java uses

447. Astrachan suggests that other unlicensed implementations of Java, and Oracle's tolerance of them, should make Google's copying fair use (paragraphs 275-280). As discussed above, it is common practice for intellectual property owners to allow free or unlicensed use of their property under some circumstances but not others. The examples cited by Dr. Astrachan (OpenJDK, GNU Classpath and Apache Harmony) do not involve circumstances where the Java API packages were incorporated into a device for widespread commercial distribution. As discussed above, OpenJDK and GNU Classpath have specific restrictions that are generally unattractive to commercial device manufacturers. Dr. Astrachan's discussion of Apache Harmony and characterization of it as an authorized use is misleading; indeed the Court previously rejected Google's implied license defense.⁶²⁰ Nor is Apache Harmony licensed because it did not pass the TCK and was not given a license to the necessary TCK⁶²¹ in a highly publicized dispute with Sun.⁶²² Dr. Astrachan quotes as a source an excerpt from a news article which reads: "May 9, 2007 article quoting Sun CEO Jonathan Schwartz saying "there is no reason that Apache cannot ship Harmony today. . . ." ⁶²³ Dr. Astrachan does not include the following sentence from the same article, which reads, "That is technically true, but Apache officials said that to do so with the TCK restrictions in place would actually go against the Apache Software license."⁶²⁴ More importantly, Dr. Astrachan ignores the very public dispute between Apache Harmony and Sun over Apache's use of the Java platform. In April 2007, the Apache Software Foundation proclaimed in an "Open Letter to Sun" its strong disagreement with Sun's licensing terms, describing the terms as "unacceptable."⁶²⁵ The dispute culminated in the Apache Software Foundation's resignation from the Java Community Process board in November 2010.⁶²⁶ The

⁶²⁰ ECF No. 1203 (Order on Equitable Defenses)

⁶²¹ See <http://docs.oracle.com/javase/1.5.0/docs/relnotes/license.html>

⁶²² TX 917, TX 1045.

⁶²³ Opening Expert Report of Dr. Owen Astrachan, January 8, 2016, p. 112 footnote 24.

⁶²⁴ TX 2341.

⁶²⁵ *Open Letter to Sun Microsystems*, The Apache Software Foundation website, April 10, 2007, (<http://www.apache.org/jcp/sunopenletter.html>); TX 0917.

⁶²⁶ *The ASF Resigns From the JCP Executive Committee*, The Apache Software Foundation blog, December 9, 2010, (https://blogs.apache.org/foundation/entry/the_asf_resigns_from_the); TX 1045.

Apache Harmony project was retired within a year, as indicated below on the Apache Harmony website FAQ page, as shown below in Figure 73.

Figure 73: Apache Harmony Retirement Notice (2011)⁶²⁷



448. These examples are thus red herrings. Google and its executives clearly understood the choice that they made, which was to decline to license Java for the Android application platform, and copy without a required license the Java API packages instead.

4) Conclusion

449. For the reasons described above, Google's public statements of its intent to use OpenJDK in the future do not alter in any way my findings that Oracle has suffered significant market harm from Google's conduct.

X. CONCLUSION

450. As I explain above, my analyses of the important economic considerations underlying Factors 1 and 4 reveal that Google's use of the Java API packages is highly commercial, not transformative, and resulted in significant market harm. From an economic perspective, this weighs squarely against a finding of fair use under Factors 1 and 4. As I mention above, I also understand the first and fourth factors are often considered to be the most significant of the fair use factors.

⁶²⁷ *FAQ*, Apache Harmony website, November 16, 2011, (<https://harmony.apache.org/faq.html>).